

THE BEST

in English



New Hello!

& King lear



2nd sec.
2023

• كتاب الشرح والتدريبات

الصف الثاني الثانوي

الترم الأول



Mohamed Ragab Saeed Ziada Tarek Alabiad

The Best

Hello !

KING LEAR

In English

&

الازهر الشريف

للصف الثاني الثانوي

الفصل الدراسي الاول

إعداد

محمد رجب سعيد زيادة

طارق الابيض

Contents

Hello ! (Units 1 : 6)

محتويات كل وحـدة :

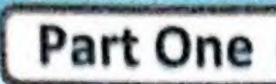
- كلمات افتتاحية
- معاني المفردات بالوحدة.
- التعبيرات و المصطلحات الموجودة فى الوحدة .
- حروف الجـر الموجودة فى الوحدة.
- الكلمة و عكسها .
- مشتقات الكلمـة .
- فروق لغوية بين أهم الكلمات.
- نص الكتاب المدرسي
- شـرح واف للقواعد و تمارين عليها.
- تمارين كتاب الطالب والأعمال التحريرية
- مهارات الاتصال .
- تمارين متنوعة.
- امتحان بعد كل وحدة .
- اختبار شهري بعد كل ٣ وحدات .

KING LEAR

- معاني كلمات كل فصل .
- نص الكتاب المدرسي بعنوان لكل فقرة .
- أسئلة اختياري يجيب عليها الطالب علي كل فصل .

الازهر الشريف

- جزء خاص بطلاب الازهر الشريف



2nd year Sec

Index

Part One

New Hello !
(Units 1 : 6)

Module 1 Health & Safety

Unit	Skills	Language
Unit 1	• Staying healthy • KING LEAR (Act I, Scene i)	must/ have to
Unit 2	• Eating around the world • KING LEAR (Act I, Scenes i-ii)	Comparative and superlative adjectives
Unit 3	• The future of food • KING LEAR (Act I, Scenes iii-iv)	Will / Be going to; Future continuous

➲ Revision 1

Module 2 Making connections

Unit	Skills	Language
Unit 4	• Changing English KING LEAR (Act II, Scenes i-ii)	Reporting verbs with infinitive clauses; could / should hove + past participle abbreviations
Unit 5	• Being smart online KING LEAR (Act III, Scenes ii-iv)	seems to, (be) meant to, (be) supposed to
Unit 6	• Learning from our mistakes KING LEAR (Act III, Scenes ii-iv)	Zero, first and second conditionals; third conditional

➲ Revision 2



Staying Healthy البقاء صحياً

SB 6 : 15

WB pages : 88 : 93

Objectives

Reading : A poster about how to perform first aid.

Writing : A persuasive email to a friend.

Listening : A news report about medical support for athletes; An explanation of the immune system.

Speaking : Suggesting solutions to problems; persuading.

Language : must / have to

Life skills : Resilience

Staying Healthy البقاء صحياً

Part 1 Reading

A) Highlighted words

infection (n.)	a disease caused by a virus or bacteria.	عدوى
perform (v.)	do an action.	يؤدي
react (v.)	do something because something else has been done.	رد فعل / يتفاعل
severe	an illness or injury that is very serious.	جاد / خطير
technique	a way of doing something with a skill.	تقنية / أسلوب
boost (v.)	help (sb) or (sth) to improve or get better	يرفع / يدعم
cell (n.)	the smallest separate part of a plant or animal.	خلية
immune system	.a way that your body protects you from disease	جهاز المناعة
organ	a part of your body that performs a job e.g. the brain or heart.	عضو (بالجسم)
virus	a very small living thing that causes disease.	فيروس

New Vocabulary

emergency (n.)	طوارئ	vegetables (n.)	خضروات
service (n.)	خدمة	cold (n.)	برد
skill (n.)	مهارة	persuade (v.)	يقنع
describe (v.)	يصف	join (v.)	يلتحق / ينضم إلى
check (v.)	يفحص	injury (n.)	إصابة
around (prep.)	حول	idea (n.)	فكرة
bleed (v.)	ينزف	cloth (n.)	قماش
sign (n.)	علامة / إشارة	brilliant (adj.)	متألق / ذكي

shoulder (n.)	كتف	champion (n.)	بطل رياضي
normal (adj.)	طبيعي	improve (v.)	يحسن
breathing (n.)	التنفس	situation (n.)	موقف
flat (adj.)	مسطح / مستوى	reason (n.)	سبب / مبرر / تعليل
surface (n.)	سطح / وجه	persuasive (adj.)	مقنع
body (n.)	جسم	perfect (adj.)	تام / متقن
shout (v.)	يصرخ	pump (v. /n.)	يضخ / مضخة
dangerous (adj.)	خطير	exercise (v. /n.)	يتمرن / تمرين
instructions (n.)	تعليمات	mountain (n.)	جبل
foot (n.)	قدم	ticket (n.)	تذكرة
chest (n.)	صدر	coat (n.)	معطف / بالطو
lock (v.)	يقفل	chance (n.)	فرصة
together (adv.)	معا	muscles (n.)	عضلات
finger (n.)	أصبع اليد	gloves (n.)	قفاز / جوانتي
press (v.)	يضغط	disease (n.)	مرض
again (adv.)	يرتفع	brain (n.)	مخ
immediately (adv.)	في الحال	lungs (n.)	الرئتين
careful (adj.)	حريص	toy (n.)	لعبة
educate (v.)	يعلم	advertisement (n.)	إعلان
expert (n.)	خبير	onion (n.)	بصلة
responsibility (n.)	مسئولية	microscope (n.)	ميكروسكوب
examination (n.)	امتحان /فحص	support (v.)	يدعم
athlete (n.)	شخص رياضي	diet (n.)	وجبة متوازنة
athletic (adj.)	رياضي	mouth (n.)	فم
without (prep.)	بدون	washing (n.)	غسيل
develop (v.)	ينمي	cousin (n.)	إبن العم / الخال
believe (v.)	يعتقد / يصدق	pleasure (n.)	سعادة / سرور

heart (n.)	القلب	unfortunately (adv.)	لسوء الحظ
call (v.)	يسمى / يدعى / يتصل	behave (v.)	يتصرف / يسلك
safety (n.)	أمان	dirty (adj.)	قذر / متسخ
encourage (n.)	يشجع	active (adj.)	نشيط / فعال
first aid (n.)	الإسعافات الأولية	avoid (v.)	يتجنب / يتحاشى
available (adj.)	متاح / متوفر	skin (n.)	الجلد
wrap (v.)	يلف	funny (adj.)	مضحك / مسلي
bandage (n.)	ضمادة	show (v.)	يظهر / يبين
enough (adj.)	كافي	seem (v.)	يبدو
cough (n.)	كحة	remind (v.)	يذكر

Collocations المتلازمات

become	⟹	an expert	يصبح خبير
do	⟹	first aid	يقوم بالاسعافات الأولية
make	⟹	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
think	⟹	fast	يفكر سريعا
want to	⟹	help people	يريد أن يساعد الناس

Suggesting solutions and persuading اقتراح الحلول و الاقناع

- I really think we should ....
- I'm sure we would ....
- That sounds fantastic! You don't have to ....
- It seems to me that .... should ....
- One thing we can do is to ....

Synonyms المرادفات

Word		Synonyms
infection	عدوى	contamination / disease / illness / sickness
perform	يؤدي	do / carry out / conduct / fulfill / achieve
react	يقوم برد فعل	behave / act / respond / reply / answer
severe	خطير / شديد	acute / serious / terrible / alarming / extreme
boost	يعزز / يحسن	improve / raise / increase / push

skill	مهارة	ability / mastery / cleverness / talent
persuade	يقنع	convince / take (sb) into / get
join	يربط / يلتحق بـ	connect / stick / unite / fix / combine / link
flat	مسطح / مستوي	level / horizontal / smooth
normal	طبيعي	usual / common / ordinary / customary / habitual / regular
instructions	تعليمات	order / command / dictate / direction
lock	يقفل (بمفتاح......)	fasten / secure / chain
injury	إصابة	wound / cut / tear / bruise
immediately	في الحال	at once / straight away / instantly / directly
perfect	تام / متقن	ideal / model / complete / total / real
together	معاً	at the same time / simultaneously
emergency	طوارئ	crisis / disaster / dilemma / catastrophe
strength	عضلات	power / strength
reason	سبب / مبرر	cause / logic / ground / explanation / excuse / justification
diet	وجبة متوازنة	food / menu / nourishment / food stuffs
encourage	يشجع	cheer / stimulate / motivate / fortify / inspire / hearten
active	نشيط / فعال	mobile / energetic / lively / dynamic / busy / on the move / on the go
funny	مسلي / مضحك	amusing / comic / humorous / laughable
develop	ينمي / يطور	grow / expand / enlarge / spread / progress / advance
safety	أمان	welfare / protection / security
wrap	يلف / يغلف	envelop / enfold / enclose / wind / cover
support	يدعم / يؤيد	hold up / carry / help / aid / assist / back

Antonyms المتضادات

strong	قوي	weak	ضعيف
healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي

ill	مريض	well	بصحة جيدة
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
flat	مسطح / مستوي	curved	منحني
carefully	بحرص	carelessly	بإهمال
normal	طبيعي	abnormal	مختل / غير طبيعي
awake	مستيقظ	asleep	نائم
protecting	حامي / واقي	damaging	ضار / متلف
responsibility	المسئولية	irresponsibility	عدم المسئولية
cover	يغطي	uncover	يكشف الغطاء
safety	الأمان	danger	الخطر
available	متاح	unavailable	غير متوفر
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
join	يربط	separate	يفصل
soon	قريبا / حالا	later	فيما بعد
right	يمين	left	يسار
free	مجاني	paid for	له ثمن
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
active	نشيط / فعال	passive	سلبي

Prepositions

way of	طريقة لـ	get up	ينهض
look at	ينظر إلى	think about	يفكر في
lie on	يتمدد / يرقد على	great at	عظيم في
press down	يضغط لأسفل	kind of	نوع من
reply to	يرد على	interested in	مهتم بـ
careful about	حريص على	important for	هام لأجل
educate ... about	يعلم ..... بشأن	go up	يرتفع / يصعد
interesting for	شيق لأجل	wait for	ينتظر لـ
come off	يسقط / يقع / ينفصل	put .... on	يضع ..... على
forget about	ينسى ما يتعلق بـ	keep ..... on	يبقى ......فوق
stay at	يبقى في	take up	يتولي / يتناول
complete with	يكمل بـ	learn about	يتعلم بشأن
pull out	يخلع	dream of	يحلم بـ
protect from	يحمي من	close to	ملاصق لـ
part of	جزء من	worried about	قلق بشأن

Idiomatic Expressions

• stay strong and healthy	يبقى قويا وصحيا
• the same as	نفس ....
• in the correct way	بالطريقة الصحيحة
• call the emergency services	اتصل بخدمات الطوارئ
• CPR(cardiopulmonary resuscitation)	تدليك القلب لإعادة الحياة
• make sure	يتأكد
• check for normal breathing	تحقق من التنفس الطبيعي
• lying on a flat surface	ممدد على سطح مستو
• on the top of	على قمة ....
• stay calm and be careful	ابقى هادئا وكن حريصا
• give advice to	يعطي النصائح لـ ..
• run a lot of every day	يجري كثيرا كل يوم
• COVID-19 (Coronavirus disease)	مرض الكورونا
• at the end of......................	في نهاية ......
• get enough sleep	يحصل على نوم كافي
• play video games	يشغل ألعاب الفيديو
• eat less fast food	يقلل من تناول الطعام السريع
• do a two-day course	يقوم ببرنامج دراسي لمدة يومين
• spend a lot of time + ing	يقضي وقت طويل في ....
• that sounds fantastic	هذا يبدو رائع
• It is important for ..... to	إنه هام لـ ...... أن ......
• put your hand to the right of	ضع يدك إلى اليمين من
• per (an / every) hour	لكل ساعة
• miss the chance to	يفوته الفرصة لـ ....
• have a look at	يلقي نظرة على .
• for free = (for nothing / free of charge / without money)	مجاني
• at the moment	في تلك اللحظة
• it is always a pleasure to	إنها دائما لسعادة أن ....

- more important than usual — أكثر أهمية من المعتاد
- take photos on their phones — يلتقطون صور على هواتفهم
- give flu to older people — ينقل الأنفلونزا للأشخاص الأكبر
- look forward to + ing — يتطلع إلى ……
- do / preform CPR — يقوم بتدليك القلب لإعادة الحياة

Word Families

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
regulate ينظم	regulation تنظيم	regular منتظم	regularly بانتظام
calm يحترم	calmness هدوء / سكون	calm هادىء	calmly بشكل هادىء
care يعتني بـ	care اهتمام	careful حريص	carefully بحرص
describe يصف	description وصف	descriptive وصفي تصويري	descriptively بشكل وصفي
correct يصحح	correction تصحيح	correct صحيح	correctly
continue يستمر	continuity استمرارية	continuous مستمر	continuously باستمرار
reason يجادل	reason سبب / مبرر	reasonable معقول / منطقي	reasonably بشكل معقول
agree يوافق	agreement موافقة / اتفاق	agreeable مقبول / لطيف	agreeably بصورة ممتعة
understand يفهم	understanding فهم / إدراك	understandable مفهوم / سهل الفهم	understandably بشكل مفهوم
improve يحسن	improvement تحسين	improved محسن	--------
damage يضر / يتلف	damage تلف / ضرر	damaging متلف / مؤذي	--------

Language Notes

reason for	explanation for an action.	شرح / تفسير / تبرير لـ (يليها إسم / ing)
reason why	explanation for an action .	شرح / تفسير / تبرير لـ (بعدها جملة كاملة)

- She asked him to return, but he didn't give a reason for not doing so.
- Tell me the reason why you come late.

safety	personal freedom from physical harm .	أمان (تجنب الأذى الشخصي)
security	preventing of loss or damage.	أمن (منع الضرر أو التلف)

- It is necessary to follow the safety instructions.
- Most hotels have security systems.

sign	using gestures to give instructions .	علامة / إشارة (لإعطاء تعليمات)
note	a short informal letter or written message .	ملحوظه قصيره (لابلاغ شخص معلومه)

- Drivers must follow traffic signs to avoid accidents.
- I left you a note to tell you I'd be late.

hear from	receive news from .	يتلقى أخبار من
hear of	know of .	يعرف / يسمع عن

- We haven't heard from Sami since he travelled abroad.
- I haven't heard of this club before.

get up	rise from bed .	ينهض (من الفراش)
wake up	cease to sleep .	يوقظ (من النوم)

- I get up and have breakfast before I go to school.
- Please, wake me up when the match begins .

dirty	not clean. قذر / متسخ (ليس نظيف)
polluted	making air and water or soil harmful to living things ملوث (جعل الهواء / الماء / التربة ضارة للكائنات الحية) .

- This chair is dirty, you'll have to clean it.
- Smoke of factories has made our towns polluted.

reply	say (sth) in response to (sth) someone has said. رد (شفوي أو مكتوب لما قاله شخص آخر)
answer	a reaction written or done to a question. إجابة / جواب لسؤال

- The secretary is typing a reply to the company.
- Think of an answer to this question.

usual	habitually occurring or done customarily. معتاد (شيء يحدث بشكل معتاد / متكرر)
common	occurring, found or done often. مشترك / شائع

- Father used to carry out his usual daily routine.
- This disease is more common in boys than in girls.

improve	cause (sth) to get better. يحسن
develop	cause (sth) to change into stronger, larger .... etc. ينمي / يطور (يحول الشيء لحاله أقوى / أكبر ....)

- You need to improve your writing skills.
- The government does its best to develop the society.

disease (n.)	a particular kind of illness. مرض محدد (ممكن أن يكون معدي)
illness (n.)	something wrong with your health. مرض / تدهور عام بالصحة

- Coronavirus is a widely spread disease in so many parts of the world.
- Doctors haven't decided the reason for the girl's illness.

Some verbs aren't followed by prepositions:

بعض الأفعال لا يتبعها حرف جر

join	يلتحق	celebrate	يحتفل بـ	enjoy	يستمتع	answer	يجيب
obey	يطيع	reach	يصل إلى	affect	يؤثر على	respect	يحترم
contact	يتصل بـ	phone	يتصل بـ	attack	يهجم على	discuss	يناقش

- get + adjective = become أصبح

عندما تأتي الصفة بعد get يساوي في المعنى become

- It gets (becomes) warm when the sun rises.

- stop + ing : no longer do this. توقف (عن فعل .....)
- stop + to + inf : wants to do (sth). توقف لأجل أن يفعل ......
- It's a good thing to stop smoking.
- I stopped to buy the newspaper on my way home.

The Reading Text
(1) Page 7 SB

How to perform first aid

1. If you find an ill or injured person, you must check the area around him/her first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then move closer to the person and look carefully at them. Do they seem to be very ill ? Do they have severe injuries ?
2. If the person is awake but not bleeding, you have to ask them how they feel and what happened. Check their body for signs of injury or infection. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.
3. If the person doesn't reply, touch their shoulder or their foot and shout to see if they react, and remember to check for normal breathing.
4. If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the emergency services immediately.
5. If you know how to perform CPR, you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is lying on their back on a flat surface such as the floor.

6. Place your hand on the centre of the person's chest. Put your other hand on top of the first hand and lock your fingers together. Make sure that your shoulders are above your hands.
7. You don't have to press down on the person's chest very much - only five or six centimetres. Keep your hands on their chest and allow it to rise up again. You have to do this 100 or 120 times a minute until the person starts breathing again.

The Reading Text
(2) Page 11 SB

Hi Fares,

How are you ? It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course next week! I really think you should join them because everyone has to know how to do first aid. You never know when someone you know will injure themselves and you'll have to help them. You would want other people to help you too, right ?

I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can think fast and you know how to stay calm in difficult situations. You don't have to become an expert, just learn enough so you can help someone until the emergency services arrive. The two-day course your friend wants to do sounds perfect.

Talk to you soon !

Mahmoud

Listening Texts

A news report about medical support for athletes; An explanation of the immune system

Have you heard of CPR? It's short for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and it's a technique you perform on a person who isn't responding and isn't breathing. CPR can help someone to stay alive until an ambulance arrives. So, before you start performing CPR on someone, you need to call an ambulance. Then while you're waiting for the ambulance, you can start performing CPR with your hands. This is the easiest way of performing CPR and the technique that's used the most often.

Start by getting down on the floor next to the person and putting the base of your hand on the bone in the centre of their chest. Then put your other hand on top of that hand and put the fingers from both hands together. Move so that your shoulders are above your hands and press 5 or 6 centimetres down onto the person's chest. Then keep your hands on the person's chest, but stop pressing on it. The chest will come back up again.

[Set in audio script box] Audio script

Most of us know that we need to stay healthy and many of us enjoy sports. But some young athletes believe that they don't need to worry about heart problems until they get very ill. However, health experts agree that athletes must get a special heart examination before they can be completely sure that they don't have a problem.

For example, in 2006, Mohamed Abdelwahab was an Egyptian footballer from Fayum who seemed to be very healthy. At that time, football clubs didn't have to check their players' hearts, but then Abdelwahab fell down while he was training. Sadly, although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't survive.

Fortunately, Egypt became a pioneer in athletic heart care in 2018 when it established the first Athletic Heart Center in the Middle East in Wadi el Nil Hospital.

It was decided that the AHC had to have the best technology to check every detail of an athlete's heart. And Dr Hazem Khamis, the Hospital Director, has said that the centre will help to protect everyone who enjoys sport in Egypt, and it will work with Liverpool John Moores University to help athletes abroad.

Dr Ahmed Ashraf Eissa, who is the Executive Director of the centre, also believes that anyone who does any kind of sport should check the health of their heart first. For example, the members of the Egyptian national handball team take full tests of their hearts before major competitions, such as the World Handball Championships.

And now Dr Hazem and Dr Ahmed have published a book together so that everyone can understand the importance of having a healthy

heart. It's called Athletic Heart: Between Dreams of a Trophy and Sudden Death. Young athletes, and their families, mustn't miss this chance to learn about the importance of heart examinations to stay fit and healthy. Repeat this one hundred, or one hundred and twenty times a minute, every minute until the ambulance arrive.

[page number signpost] WB page 3 Set in audio script box]

Of course, not everyone will become an athlete or a footballer, but that does not mean we should forget about our hearts. So what should parents do to help their children stay free from heart disease?

Your heart pumps about 380 litres of blood through your body every hour. This is a lot of work. In fact, your heart has to work harder than any other muscle in your body. That is why we need to keep it fit and healthy.

We all need to exercise for 30 minutes every day if we can. We should all get lots of exercise- that means Mum and Dad as well as the children. Try to walk, cycle, swim or play games outside as often as you can. Play together as a family and it will be more fun. If a child decides to take up a new sport, send them to visit a doctor to check their heart first. They'll probably be fine, but the doctor will need to do some tests to check.

Eat healthily, too. Show your children that they need to look at the labels before they buy something. They mustn't eat too much of something if it has a lot of salt or fat in it. Eat well, do lots of exercise and you should have healthy hearts for life!

Listening [Audio icon] 1.3

Listen to an explanation of the immune system. What does the immune system fight?

Our organs are the parts of our bodies that help us to do things, like the brain that thinks, or the heart that sends blood around our bodies. The immune system comes from the cells and organs that work together to protect us from diseases.

The immune system does this by destroying things that get into our bodies like viruses. A virus is a very, very small thing that causes a disease. The disease could be something ordinary, like the kind of cold we all get sometimes, or it could be something serious like COVID-19, which first appeared at the end of 2019.

When a virus gets into a part of the body, a message is sent to the immune system. Then the immune system reacts by sending cells to find the virus. Cells are the smallest, separate living things in our bodies and they are small enough to fight against a disease.

Some people's immune systems work better than other people's. We all want our immune systems to be strong so we can stay healthy, so what can we do to help?

We can boost our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables, especially vegetables with green leaves. We also need to exercise regularly. We don't have to run 50 kilometres every day, but we need to be as active as possible.

We also need to make sure that we get enough sleep. For most people that means at least seven hours every night. Finally, we must do things like washing our hands regularly, which will help us to avoid getting a virus or an infection in the first place.

We also need to do things like covering our mouths when we cough to stop other people getting an infection or virus.

Check- do =take up = get into = make - appear seem -organ member
Start avoid stop = like = as = infection infectious label title .

Exercises based on Vocabulary

a) Choose the two correct answers out of the Five options given :

1) Children by nature, like to .... new sports.

a) learn b) teach c) avoid
d) take up e) instruct

2) My son never gets cold. He seems to be .... them.

a) immune to b) protected against c) liable to
d) exposed to e) subject to

3) A virus is a .... thing that causes a disease.

a) giant b) big c) very small
d) tinny e) gigantic

4) such plants can't .... in very cold conditions.

a) survive b) survival c) live d) die e) perish

5) Another word in American for emergency room is ....

a) casualty b) emergence c) hospital
d) emission e) both b and d

6) I .... after climbing the stairs.

a) feel depressed b) fell shivery c) feel breathless
d) can't breathe easily e) feel painful

7) We need to cover our mouths when we cough to stop other people .... the disease .

a) getting b) avoiding c) separating
d) killing e) catching

8) Each of the body's organ .... a particular job.

a) does b) performs c) makes
d) plays e) carries

9) The north and south of the country are .... by a mountain range.

a) separated b) constructed c) established
d) divided e) decorated

10) A stethoscope is used for listening to a patient's ....

a) chest b) brain c) kidney
d) liver e) heart

B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1) You'd better wear a face mask to avoid the ....of Coronavirus.

a) protection b) injection c) infection d) interaction

2) The operation will be .... by a famous surgeon next week.

a) performed b) deformed c) informed d) formed

3) Teachers .... angrily to the pupil's bad behaviour.

a) acted b) reacted c) clapped d) smiled

4) The team captain had a .... leg injury and had to stop playing for a year.

a) simple b) slight c) trivial d) severe

5) Doing a sport is a very effective .... for keeping fit.

a) technique b) message c) contact d) machine

6) Building more modern hotels is needed to .... tourism
a) combat b) boost c) fight d) discourage
7) No new brain .... are produced after birth
a) bells b) bills c) cells d) circles
8) For your own ...., please don't smoke inside the plane
a) certainty b) wealth c) ability d) safety
9) That man never gets colds, he seems to be .... to them.
a) exposed b) immune c) liable d) subjected
10) Your ears, eyes, tongue, nose and skin are your sense ....
a) organs b) thoughts c) comments d) feelings
11) It's possible to pass on the .... to others through physical contact.
a) ideas b) suggestions c) propriety d) virus
12) Because of the serious floods, the president has declared the state of ....
a) excitement b) pleasure c) emergency d) joy
13) The man who had an accident died of an internal ....
a) bleeding b) feeling c) bending d) believing
14) The whole team played with great .... and determination.
a) area b) size c) design d) skill
15) There's a .... on the door saying " No entry " .
a) letter b) sign c) cover d) message
16) This road has a .... surface, you can drive safely on it.
a) curved b) bumpy c) flat d) unpaved
17) The girl was taken to hospital with serious head ....
a) injection b) shapes c) protection d) injuries
18) I could hear the sound of my grandfather's heavy .... while climbing the stairs.
a) breathing b) blowing c) bleeding d) blazing
19) Didn't the DVD player come with any .... ?
a) beliefs b) arguments c) instructions d) opinions
20) .... the chicken in foil and cook it for two hours.
a) Tie b) Wrap c) Wind d) Stick
21) How much does it cost to .... a child privately ?
a) feed b) bring c) hire d) educate

22) The water......................... has stopped working, so we no longer have water in our flat .
a) well b) stream c) pump d) wheel

23) Mr. Hatem's opinions are very .... and acceptable .
a) expensive b) persuasive c) extreme d) fanatic

24) They need to bring in an .... to deal with the traffic problem.
a) expert b) orator c) illustrator d) editor

25) Each .... admits one member and one guest.
a) bribe b) ransom c) fine d) ticket

26) It is believed that animals .... differently before a natural disaster.
a) believe b) behave c) blame d) blaze

27) It is a great .... to welcome you all here this evening .
a) pleasure b) measure c) treasure d) pressure

28) Put your .... away now, it's time for bed.
a) machines b) ideas c) toys d) eyes

29) You need to exercise to strengthen your stomach ....
a) pillars b) muscles c) poles d) corners

30) Ensure the wound is free from dirt before applying ....
a) screen b) rules c) blanket d) bandage

31) Father's car is ten years old but is in almost ....condition.
a) gloomy b) perfect c) sad d) appalling

32) He is looking forward to becoming world .... again .
a) champion b) hero c) president d) ruler

33) Put your .... in your pocket so that you don't lose them .
a) shoes b) socks c) gloves d) stockings

34) It is necessary that food is made .... to the famine areas .
a) rare b) scarce c) cooked d) available

35) Such stories are really interesting .... young children .
a) in b) for c) at d) from

36) Emotional responses are a function of the right section of the ....
a) brain b) nerve c) sight d) hair

37) What are the team's .... of success ?
a) experiences b) experiments c) arguments d) chances

38) I need a clean .... for cleaning the table .
a) clothe b) clothing c) clothes d) cloth

39) We need to .... our teachers in their efforts to raise standards.
a) support b) fail c) reject d) oppose

40) Today's newspapers are full of .... for cars .
a) announcements b) petitions
c) advertisements d) sayings

41) He plays the piano perfectly, he is a .... musician .
a) modest b) brilliant c) humble d) legal

42) I think I'm getting a cold, I've been .... and sneezing all day .
a) laughing b) coughing c) smiling d) jogging

43) It's important to have a balanced .... to stay healthy. .
a) day b) dream c) dive d) diet

44) We still have not received any .... to our offer .
a) reply b) wisdom c) thought d) view

45) My uncle took carpentry .... when he was a child .
a) off b) out c) down d) up

46) I need to .... a two–month course in computer .
a) make b) do c) be d) think

47) I .... the chance to be promoted and I regretted it.
a) hid b) missed c) lost d) broke

48) All I need is to lead a .... life with no cares .
a) habitual b) customary c) normal d) strange

49) Mother always advises me not to stay........................... late.
a) up b) at c) with d) on

50) White blood cells help defend the body against ....
a) frustration b) investigation
c) infection d) examination

51) The girl rested her head on her mother's..................... and began to cry.
a) nose b) shoulder c) head d) feet

52) It's not a good idea to wear a shirt open revealing your...................... .
a) hand b) leg c) heart d) chest

53) The boy has an extremely bad..................... , don't go near him.
a) suggestion b) cold c) idea d) opinion

54) After I had finished the exam, I...................... the answers for mistakes.
a) changed b) chased c) checked d) saved

55) A crowd gathered....................... the scene of the accident.
a) above b) over c) under d) around

56) The police officer asked the witness to..................... the murderer.
a) describe b) prescribe c) subscribe d) transcript

57) I had to undergo a medical........................ when I joined the police academy.
a) plant b) examination c) field d) herb

58) The......................... helps doctors to study blood cells well.
a) glass b) microscope c) glasses d) telescope

59) It's the teacher's...................... to check our workbooks every week.
a) responsibility b) imagination c) wish d) dream

60) The meal will cost 50 pounds....................... person.
a) on b) as c) for d) per

B) Writing

a) Translate into Arabic :

1. Poverty and social problems may cause some children to live in the streets and become homeless. It's a catastrophe which needs to be solved.

....

....

Professor Yacoub was a member of the team who did the first heart transplant. Such work is an unprecedented achievement.

....

....

3. Now I work for a well-known Egyptian company, which makes computer programs for important companies.

....

....

4. Despite his retirement , Yacoub is still making efforts for children with heart problems to save their lives.

....

....

١) ينبغي علي وسائل الاعلام نشر العادات الصحية بين المواطنين لتجنب الأمراض المعديه الفتاكه مثل الكورونا وانفلونزا الطيور.

....

....

٢) ينبغي علي المؤسسات الخيرية المساهمة في تقديم الرعاية الطبية لمرضي القلب وكبار السن والمعاقين وتقديم الدعم المالى لهم.

....

....

٣) ينبغي أن تسرع بالاتصال بمراكز الطوارئ في حالات الحرائق أو حوادث الطرق أو أعمال السطو المسلح حتى تقوم السلطات باتخاذ اللازم.

....

....

٤) هل تعلم أن القيام بالاسعافات الأوليه بطريقة صحيحة يمكن أن ينقذ حياة الكثيرين من المصابين والمرضى ولكن القيام بها يستلزم التدريب السليم.

....

....

Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

" How to stay healthy "

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Part (II)

b) Focus on Grammar

a) Present necessity

الضرورة / الالزام في المضارع

We use (have (got) to / has (got) to + inf.) for rules :

نستخدم (have to / has to + inf.) لإعطاء القواعد والتعليمات التي يلزم اتباعها .

- We have to go to school every day.

تستخدم غالباً مع ظروف التكرار مثل :

Always / never / normally / rarely / sometimes ....etc.)

- I often have to work at the weekend to get everything done.

We use (must + inf.) to express strong feelings , wishes , warm invitations and strong advice.

نستخدم (must + inf.) للتعبير عن المشاعر والامنيات والدعوات والنصيحة القوية (اراء شخصية) وتذكير انفسنا بأحداث هامة .

- I must work hard for the exam next week. (reminding myself)
- I must buy a present for my mother . (inner feelings)
- You must come to my party tonight. (warm invitation)
- You must stop smoking. (strong advice)

- هناك تعبيرات تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة والالزام

- It's necessary to ....
- It's obligatory to...................
- (sb) is obliged to.................
- It's a must to........................

---

b) Lack of present necessity. غياب ونقص الضرورة في المضارع (لا داعي)

don't / doesn't have to = don't / doesn't need to = needn't + مصدر

هناك تعبيرات تستخدم للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة

- ✓ It's unnecessary to ....
- ✓ It's not obligatory to......................
- ✓ It's up to you................................

- **I don't need to** buy a new pen. I've already got one.
- My father **doesn't have to work** today because it is a holiday.
- You **needn't cut** the grass, I'll do it later.

---

c) Past necessity أضطر إلى / الضرورة والإلزام في الماضي

had to + مصدر = It was necessary for (sb. to + inf ....

- My grandfather **had to work** six days a week.
- I **had to go** to the dentist last night. **(I was obliged to ....)** **اضطررت إلي**
- When **did** you **have to** give the money back ?

D) Lack of past necessity غياب ونقص الضرورة في الماضي

didn't have to / didn't need to + مصدر **الحدث لم يتم**

= It was not necessary for (sb.) to + inf ....

- You **didn't have to water** the garden . It wasn't dry .

Needn't have + P.P **الحدث تم**

= It was not necessary to do something but you did.

- You **needn't have bought eggs** . We've a lot in the refrigerator.
- I didn't need to say anything at all, so I was silent during the meeting.

E) Future necessity الضرورة في المستقبل (سيكون مضطرا إلى)

Will have to + مصدر = (It will be necessary)

- The flight is at six in the morning , so we'll have to get up very early.
- Employees will have to accept the new rules or be dismissed.

f) Warning (prohibition) التحذير والتحريم

	= It's a rule	قانون / قاعدة
	= It's against the law.	
mustn't + مصدر	= It's forbidden / prohibited / banned / not allowed	ممنوع / مُحرم / محظور
can't + مصدر	= It's important not to do	

- You **mustn't smoke** in hospitals. It's against the law.
- You **mustn't put** that bag on the table. It's dirty.

General Remarks ملحوظات عامة

a) **must** (internal obligation)

إلزام داخلي شخصي (شعور شخص بضرورة القيام بشيء)

have to (external obligation)

إلزام خارجي غير شخصى (الموقف أو حقائق تحتم القيام بشيء)

- I **must** get to the bank today. short of money)
- I can't meet you on Friday. I have to work. (short of time)

b) **must** ⟶ **future** ⟶ When the obligation already exists.

تشير إلي المستقبل عندما توجد الضرورة والإلزام بالفعل.

will have to ⟶ Future conditional obligation.

ضرورة مستقبلية مشروطة (نتيجة لشرط / حالة ما)

- I must do well in my exams next month.
- If I fail my driving test first time , I have to take it again.

c) في الاستفهام والنفي تستخدم { **have to** } فقط مع { **Do / Does / did** }

- Do I have to wear a uniform today ?

1) should + inf
ought to + inf

نستخدم الآتي للتعبير عن النصيحة

- You should take the bus to work to arrive in time.
- Hany should have breakfast at home.
- You ought to help your mother with the housework.

هناك تعبيرات تستخدم للتعبير عن النصيحة

- It's advisable to..................................
- I advise you to...............................
- Take my advice and.....................
- You'd better.................... ....

2) shouldn't + inf
oughtn't to

للتعبير عن شيء لا ينصح بحدوثه

- You shouldn't go to school on foot. You can take the bus.
- You oughtn't to wait for me if you are in a hurry.

تعبيرات تستخدم للتعبير عن شيء لا يفضل حدوثه

- It's inadvisable to...........................
- Take my advice and don't..............
- You'd better not ....

A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I arrived at seven but it was not necessary . I .... at that time.
   a) **needn't arrive** b) **shouldn't arrive**
   c) **mustn't arrive** d) **needn't have arrived**
2. I .... feed the baby . He's very hungry.
   a) **must** b) **had to** c) **needn't** d) **may**
3. The bike tyre is flat . You .... pump it.
   a) **can't** b) **won't** c) **must** d) **had to**
4. It's got a battery that turns the wheels , so you .... pedal .
   a) **mustn't** b) **needn't** c) **can't** d) **haven't**
5. You .... look both ways before you cross a road.
   a) **may** b) **have to** c) **will** d) **might**

6. Now you've got a car, you .... use a bicycle any more.
   a) mustn't b) shan't c) don't have to d) can't
7. I .... replace bits of my old car, didn't I ?
   a) have to b) must c) need to d) had to
8. You .... eat sweets in class. It's against school rules .
   a) shouldn't b) needn't c) aren't allowed to d) won't
9. It wasn't necessary for Susan to make a statement. This means she .... a statement.
   a) needn't make b) must make
   c) doesn't have to make d) needn't have made
10. We ....wear seatbelts while driving – others decide for us to do so.
   a) had to b) must c) have to d) can't
11. You .... be late for the concert. It's forbidden.
   a) must b) had to c) needn't d) mustn't
12. You .... hurt animals, they are creatures like us.
   a) had to b) have to c) mustn't d) must
13. Children .... pick flowers and plants. They are useful for us.
   a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) must
14. We .... move to a bigger house . We decide to do so.
   a) have to b) must c) needn't d) mustn't
15. I .... remember to buy some stamps. It's important to do that.
   a) must b) mustn't c) had to d) don't need to
16. I've warned you twice not to do that. You ....do that.
   a) must b) mustn't c) have got to d) needn't
17. We :.........................give in our homework tomorrow.
   a) mustn't b) needn't c) will have to d) don't have to
18. You ....take photographs near here. It's forbidden.
   a) must b) have to c) mustn't d) needn't
19. Must we finish this exercise today? No , you ....
   a) have to b) mustn't c) have got to d) don't have to
20. You .... come to the meeting if you're too busy.
   a) needn't b) must c) mustn't d) have to

21. You are too fat to join the Police Academy. You .... go on a diet.
a) had to b) may c) has to d) have to
22. We ....walk home last night. There were no buses.
a) had to b) must c) must have d) have to
23. You ....whisper. Nobody can hear us .
a) must b) needn't c) should d) need
24. I ....go yet. I can stay a little longer.
a) mustn't b) must c) don't need to d) can't
25. It's raining outside . You ....take your umbrella .
a) must b) had to c) needn't d) may
26. What ....to do to get a driver's licence?
a) may I b) have I c) do I have d) will I
27. Heba's sight is very poor , She .... wear glasses for reading.
a) must b) had to
c) doesn't have to d) didn't have to
28. I ....wear a suit to work , but I usually do .
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) don't have to d) can't
29. She stayed in bed this morning because she ....go to work.
a) didn't have to b) doesn't have to
c) mustn't d) will have to
30. Why ....to go to hospital last night?
a) do you have b) have you got
c) must d) did you have
31. My children .... study ancient history at school next year.
a) have to b) had to c) needn't d) may
32. We .... buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) must d) can't
33. My staff and I .... work twelve hours a day for six days a week.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) had to d) have to
34. At other times it's quieter, we .... work such long hours.
a) must b) should c) don't have to d) can
35. We ....get up or go to bed at particular times. It's optional.
a) had to b) mustn't c) don't need to d) can't

36. We ....forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.
a) had to b) mustn't c) don't need to d) can't
37. I..........................get up very early on school days.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) had to d) have to
38. I ....phone my friend this evening. I promised to do so.
a) must b) shouldn't c) don't have to d) had to
39. In some countries, children ....wear school uniform. It's optional.
a) had to b) mustn't c) don't need to d) can't
40. You ....show your passport when you visit another country.
a) needn't b) shouldn't c) had to d) have to
41. We ....buy some milk from the shops because we don't have any.
a) need to b) mustn't c) don't need to d) may
42. Most school children in Britain .... wear a school uniform.
a) need to b) needn't c) may d) have to
43. You .... spend too much money. You'll want some for your holiday.
a) needn't b) should c) must d) mustn't
44. You .... take that book back to the library yet. You can keep it for another week.
a) don't need to b) mustn't c) can't d) have to
45. You .... pass your exams to go to university.
a) don't need to b) needn't c) have to d) mustn't
46. I really .... phone Mazen, I promised I'd phone him as soon as I had any news.
a) have to b) need c) may d) must
47. You .... take this train. There's another one in ten minutes.
a) mustn't b) can't
c) aren't allowed to d) don't need to
48. I want to go to university. I .... apply before the end of the week
a) needn't b) need to c) don't have to d) mustn't
49. You .... see your doctor . You look ill .
a) must b) can't c) may d) needn't
50. School starts at 8 : 30 . I ....get there before that time .
a) can b) may c) have to d) might

Part IV King Lear

New Vocabulary

Britain	بريطانيا	foolish	أحمق
daughter	إبنة	protect	يحمي
marry	يتزوج	sword	سيف
husband	زوج	terrible	فظيع / سيء
palace	قصر	stay safe	يبقى آمن
Duke	الدوق (لقب ملكي)	expect	يتوقع
proud of	فخور بـ	promise	يعد
soldier	جندي	shout	يصرخ
eldest	الأكبر	suddenly	فجأة
fine	مناسب	suggest	يقترح
clown	مهرج	choice	اختيار
servant	خادم	favourite	مفضل
messenger	رسول	strange	غريب
map	خريطة	actions	تصرفات
kingdom	مملكة	go away	يرحل
divide into	ينقسم إلى	unkind to	غير عطوف علي
beauty	جمال	queen	ملكة
countryside	الريف	hate	يكره
forest	غابة	again	مرة أخرى
feeling	مشاعر	theatre	مسرح
speech	خطاب / كلام	scene	مشهد (في مسرحية)
cruel	قاسي / عنيف	act	فصل (في مسرحية)
title	لقب	play	مسرحية
power	قوة / سلطة	decision	قرار
majesty	جلالة	honestly	بأمانة

Act I, Scene i

[In King's Lear Palace.]

(Duke of) Gloucester : Ah, the Duke of Kent ! Hello, my friend. Have you met my son, Edmund ?

(Duke of) Kent : I haven't, Kent. He's a fine young man. You must be proud of him.

Gloucester : I'm very proud him.

Edmund : I'm pleased to meet you, sir.

Gloucester : Edmund is my second child. I also have another son, Edgar, who is about a year older than Edmund .

Edmund : Listen ! The king is coming.

[King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave.]

King Lear : Listen, everyone. I want to tell you all about my plan. I've decided to give everything in my Kindom to my three daughters, Goneril, Regan and Cordelia. I will also give an answer to the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy. They have both asked to marry my youngest daughter Cordelia.

First, look at this map of my kingdom. I have divided it into three. I want to give the largest part to the daughter who loves me the most. So tell me, my daughters, which of you loves me the most ? Goneril, you are the eldest so you can speak first.

Goneril : Father, I love you more than anything. No child can love a father more than I love you. I love you more than health, beauty and riches.

Cordelia : [To herself.] I love my father, but I don't know what to say !

King Lear : [Pointing to the map.] Goneril, you can have all this land, with its green forests and beautiful countryside. Now, Regan, wife of Cornwall. What does my second daughter want to say ?

Regan : Father, Goneril has described her love for you very well. But I have more to say. Your love is the only thing that makes me happy. I love nobody as much as you.

(Duke Of) Cornwall: Your majesty, please stop !

Kent: I'll say it again, King Lear, You've done a terrible thing.

King Lear: Kent! You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed. Go !

Kent: Then I'll say goodbye to you, my dear king.

[To Cordelia] I hope you stay safe, young lady, because you were honest. And now I say goodbye to all of you; I shall live my life in a new country.

[Gloucester enters with the king of France, the Duke of Burgundy and his men.]

Gloucester: Here are the king of France and the Duke of Burgundy, your majesty.

King Lear: Burgundy, I will speak to you first. What do youy expect to have if you marry my daughter Cordelia ?

(Duke Of) Burgundy: Your majesty, I only expect to have what you promised me.

King Lear: I am sorry, but things have changed. Sir, there she is. You can marry her.

Burgundy: I don't understand.

King Lear: You'll get my daughter and nothing more. Take her, or leave her. It's your choice.

Burgundy: I'm sorry, you. I cannot marry her without some of your land.

King Lear: Then leave her, sir.

Cordelia: Goodbye, Burgundy! I see now that you love things more than you love me, so I shall not be your wife.

King Lear: [To the King of France.] So, the great king of France, I don't want you to marry someone I hate ; so I suggest you give your love to a better girl.

(King Of) France: But sir, Cordelia was your favourite daughter! It is very strange that she has suddenly lost all your love. I cannot believe that Cordelia could do anything terrible to anyone.

Cordelia: [To King Learnt] Father, understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words. Please tell him that I haven't done anything wrong to make you hate me.

King Lear: I shall not. Go! you will have nothing from me !

France: My beautiful Cordelia, you are richer from being poor and I love you more now that you are hated! I'm happy for you to be my wife.

[To the King] Your daughter will be queen of my country. Say goodbye to them, Cordelia, although they've been unkind to you. You have lost your life her, but you'll find a better one with me.

King Lear: She is yours, king of Franc; I'll never see her face again. [To Cordelia] Leave now without my love. Come with me, Burgundy.

[King Lear leaves with Burgundy, Cornwall, Albany, and Gloucester]

Exercises based on Act 1 Scene 1

1) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The circus .... was dismissed because he failed to make the audience laugh .
   a) owner b) trainer c) manager d) clown
2. I spent two years as an army ....
   a) designer b) soldier c) painter d) actor
3. The .... is a man of a very high rank in a country .
   a) soldier b) servant c) officer d) duke
4. We must be very proud .... this ambitious man.
   a) on b) for c) of d) from
5. You can't be good at geography without being able to understand ....
   a) maps b) poetry c) signs d) notes
6. I divided the apple .... two halves .
   a) for b) at c) on d) into
7. The destruction of rain .... has caused terrible changes in the environment.
   a) fields b) deserts c) forests d) clouds
8. Life is quiet and enjoyable in the ....
   a) cities b) countryside c) capitals d) towns

9. " Sir " was the .... given to Professor Magdi Yacoub .
   a) address b) headline c) topic d) title
10. The president gave a .... on TV last night .
   a) speech b) present c) loan d) prize
11. It's so .... to keep a dog chained up like that all the time .
   a) beautiful b) kind c) cruel d) rice
12. I've no .... over him, he does what he wants to .
   a) wealth b) power c) account d) strength
13. It was .... of you to expose your life to danger .
   a) good b) careful c) wonderful d) foolish
14. There're different models of the car, make your ....
   a) chance b) cheese c) choice d) change
15. King Lear was wrong to give his country .... in that way .
   a) out b) away c) up d) over
16. A .... is a long sharp weapon with a metal blade used in the past .
   a) sword b) ruler c) table d) bag
17. The weather was .... during our trip, so I didn't enjoy it .
   a) mild b) temperate c) terrible d) fine
18. Children should stay .... away from all dangers .
   a) angry b) torture c) asleep d) safe
19. It is said that .... speak louder than words .
   a) predictions b) actions c) infections d) injections
20. I watched the performer of the .... on Cleopatra Theatre .
   a) poem b) story c) novel d) play

B) Write a story of about (180) words on the following topic:
" King Lear wasn't so wise "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Part VI General Exercises

A) Highly Distinguished:-

1. If he had noticed the warning .... of the road, the accident wouldn't have happened.
   a) signs b) messages c) letters d) gestures
2. Staying calm is an .... of self-control .
   a) intention b) ambition c) operation d) exercise
3. Be quiet! The .... of decision remains with the president.
   a) content b) power c) imagination d) dream
4. In your ...., I'd look for another job.
   a) situation b) ownership c) personality d) psychology
5. You only have to open an attachment to pass the .... from one computer to another .
   a) blood b) pollution c) infection d) oxygen
6. A .... drought has ruined the crops this year .
   a) simple b) beneficial c) severe d) useful
7. The crowd .... against the locked doors trying to get into the building .
   a) called b) touched c) compressed d) pressed
8. There were very few .... to our advertisement.
   a) replies b) words c) says d) shows
9. The equipment .... well during the tests .
   a) designed b) performed c) played d) shouted
10. They were selling the goods at half the .... cost .
    a) habitual b) normal c) unknown d) hidden

B) Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and answer the questions :

Professor Sir Magdi Yacoub is a brilliant surgeon who has developed open – heart transplant surgery . He has recently come to his country Egypt with an international team of multi nations . In a remote town in Upper Egypt, they successfully performed more than twenty serious surgical operations . The patients were children with

serious heart cases . The processes of the surgeries were transmitted by the Egyptian television all over the world . It was intended to teach young surgeons new techniques of heart surgical operations .

Modern technology has contributed to the development of the open-heart and heart surgery . The results are very promising and have helped to save thousands of lives .

On a TV interview , Professor Sir Magdi Yacoub expressed his feelings as an Egyptian citizen who repays his country for the rights he enjoyed during his life in his motherland .

Professor Magdi Yacoub is doing his best to train an outstanding team of young Egyptian surgeons to run the new spreading medical centres of heart surgeries . They will be constructed in most of the Egyptian towns and cities. Professor Magdi Yacoub is looking forward to making his country a world medical centre for open-heart and heart transplant surgery .

a) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Professor Magdi Yacoub's team were ....

a) **only from Egypt** b) **from England**
c) **from different countries** d) **from Egyptian towns**

2. The surgical operations were transmitted to ....

a) **teach people** b) **train young surgeons**
c) **entertain the viewers** d) **rescue the children**

3. The results of heart surgery are ....

a) **frustrating** b) **depressing** c) **promising** d) **hopeless**

4. The word "multi" means ....

a) **mono** b) **solo** c) **bi** d) **many**

5. If the results are very promising, they are ....

a) **hopeless** b) **hopeful** c) **favorable** d) **both b & c**

6. The underlined pronoun " they " refers to ....

a) **surgeons** b) **medical centres** c) **teams** d) **nations**

7. To " run " a company means to .... it .

a) control b) manage c) hasten d) both a & b

8. If a town is remote, it is ....

a) very near b) very close

c) off the beaten track d) neighbouring

c) Translation:

a. Translate into Arabic:

1. Every citizen should have the right of enjoying medical insurance. It's very useful in case of accidents or injuries .

....

....

2. Pupils should be trained on how to think creatively, how to deal with problems and find practical solutions.

....

....

b. Translate into English:

١. تطورت عمليات زراعة الاعضاء بشكل مذهل في العشر سنوات الاخيرة وانتشرت في جميع المراكز الطبية علي مستوي العالم.

....

....

٢. ينبغي أن نشجع أبنائنا على اتباع العادات الصحية لتجنب الإصابة بالأمراض من خلال نشر الوعي الصحي بينهم.

....

....

d) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

" The importance of learning first–aid "

....

....

e) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following:

" The secrets of science "

....

....

....

A Model Essay

The secrets of science . اسرار العلم

In spite of great scientific discoveries and the limitless بلا حدود modern inventions , science has not revealed all its secrets yet . There are still numerous miracles معجزات عديدة in the field of science . Scientists are still making their efforts to reveal the secrets of science for the sake of humanity من اجل البشرية. Some serious diseases still fiercely attack man تهاجم الانسان بشراسة. For instance , scientists are working day and night to fight fatal diseases امراض فتاكة. In order to encourage scientists to go on performing their experiments , they are fantastically rewarded .

For example , Professor Ahmad Zewail was given the World Nobel Prize in chemistry for his outstanding فريد discovery of the Femto Second that will cause a scientific revolution ثورة علمية in the fields of industry , medicine and chemistry .

This century is characterized by its scientific challenges and breakthroughs طفرات علميه. So , most countries have great emphasis on science and technology in education. It's also essential to get a flow of ideas and scientific knowledge from the outside world. A country like Japan , is distinguished by يتميز بـ scientific and technological innovations.

Part V



Exercises from the Students' books & the workbooks

تمارين من كتاب الطالب و كتاب الأعمال التحريرية

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... means the same as " do an action ".
   a) Reform b) Deform c) Perform d) Inform
2. A / An .... is a disease caused by a virus or bacteria .
   a) infection b) operation c) imagination d) interaction
3. The word " ...." describes an illness or injury that is very serious.
   a) light b) slight c) simple d) severe
4. A .... is a way of doing something with a skill.
   a) technology b) technique c) term d) tablet
5. To .... is to do something because something else has been done .
   a) act c) protect b) react d) infect
6. Football clubs have to stop .... the health of their players .
   a) to damaging b) to damage c) damaged d) damaging
7. Athletes must understand the importance of .... their hearts.
   a) finding b) checking c) sending d) replacing
8. Doctors have to educate us .... regular exercise.
   a) from b) for c) at d) about
9. You .... put on gloves helping someone who's bleeding. If you don't, you might give them an infection.
   a) must b) might c) may d) will
10. You .... take a bandage or cloth and press it down on the area which is bleeding.
    a) mustn't b) don't need c) must d) may
11. If anything is in the person's arm, you .... pull it out because it could hurt them more.
    a) have to b) needn't c) must d) mustn't

12. Wrap the bandage around the person's arm. You .... make it very tight, but make sure it can't come off.
    a) have to b) should c) mustn't d) must
13. Schools .... forget about the health and safety of the students.
    a) mustn't b) must c) has to d) have to
14. Schools .... encourage students to check the health of their hearts with a doctor.
    a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) needn't d) must
15. Schools .... tell students who have an infection to stay at home.
    a) mustn't b) must c) has to d) won't
16. Schools .... teach students how to perform first–aid.
    a) shouldn't b) has to c) must d) mustn't
17. Schools .... tell students what they can and can't eat.
    a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) has to d) must
18. Schools .... have first–aid kits available.
    a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) won't
19. Schools .... ask students to do sport without checking their hearts.
    a) haven't b) don't c) must d) shouldn't
20. The immune system can react when there is .... in the body.
    a) protein b) virus c) vitamin d) juice
21. People with .... immune systems get ill more often.
    a) weak b) strong c) hard d) efficient
22. Eating vegetables with green leaves helps our .... system.
    a) electric b) immune c) nervous d) respiratory
23. If you get .... sleep, your immune system will work better.
    a) lack b) little c) enough d) less
24. I'm thinking about .... more exercise.
    a) finding b) thinking c) doing d) making
25. I'm interested .... being a doctor.
    a) on b) in c) at d) for

26. You .... become an Olympic champion to do exercise.
    a) have to b) don't have to c) must d) mustn't
27. I want to eat .... food.
    a) healthy b) unhealthy c) bad d) rotten
28. It is important .... the person to lie on their back before you do CPR.
    a) of b) from c) at d) for
29. You should put your .... to the right of the person's chest to do CPR.
    a) leg b) hand c) foot d) head
30. To do CPR, press .... on the person's chest five to six times.
    a) down b) up c) over d) under
31. You must wait .... the person's chest to go up before you press again.
    a) in b) at c) for d) on
32. The heart .... pump a lot of blood through the body.
    a) mustn't b) has to c) can't d) have to
33. You .... eat things with a lot of salt or fat in them.
    a) must b) mustn't c) should d) have to
34. You .... pay to go in the museum. It is free to enter.
    a) have to b) must c) mustn't d) don't have to
35. Leila .... work hard if she wants to pass her exams.
    a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) needn't
36. You ....forget to bring a coat to the mountains. It will be cold.
    a) mustn't b) must c) needn't d) shouldn't
37. You .... buy a ticket before you get on the train.
    a) mustn't b) might c) may d) have to
38. What .... athletes check regularly ?
    a) has b) must c) have d) mustn't
39. What didn't football clubs .... do in 2006 ?
    a) have to b) have c) must d) had to
40. What technology did they .... to put in the Athletic Heart Centre ?
    a) must b) had c) have d) having

41. Which book .... you read if you are interested in having a healthy heart ?
   a) must b) have c) had d) did
42. What .... young athletes and their families miss the chance to do ?
   a) doesn't b) hadn't c) mustn't d) haven't
43. We can .... our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables.
   a) boost b) damage c) replace d) destroy
44. The skin is the body's largest ....
   a) member b) organ c) section d) organisation
45. The advertisement will really .... the number of toys the shops sell.
   a) boost b) decrease c) reduce d) lessen
46. You can see a .... of an onion using a simple microscope.
   a) root b) cover c) leaf d) cell
47. A good .... can help to support your immune system.
   a) mark b) idea c) diet d) suggestion
48. We don't have to run 50 km everyday, but we .... be as active as possible.
   a) needn't b) have to c) shouldn't d) can't
49. We must .... sure that we get enough sleep.
   a) make b) take c) give d) think
50. We must .... things like washing our hands regularly.
   a) find b) form c) make d) do
51. Washing our hands will help us to .... getting a virus or an infection in the first place.
   a) ensure b) develop c) improve d) avoid

Test (1) based on unit One

A) Choose the two correct answers out of the Five options given :

1. The boxer gave his opponent such a .... blow that he fell on the ground.
   a) slight b) severe c) light
   d) great e) hidden
2. After the road accident, the driver had a serious ....
   a) injury b) situation c) opinion
   d) decision e) cut
3. It's important to follow the instructions carefully for .... CPR.
   a) performing b) making c) saving
   d) doing e) giving
4. This young surgeon is the man who will .... the operation.
   a) make b) perform c) do
   d) play e) carry

B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5. What does the student .... do to join the university ?
   a) has to b) must c) have to d) had to
6. They .... take the man who had a heart attack to hospital.
   a) had to b) have to c) must d) has to
7. You .... count your money before leaving the bank.
   a) may b) must c) might d) needn't
8. A good citizen should reply .... the call of his country.
   a) on b) to c) in d) for
9. We do not accept cheques. You .... pay in cash.
   a) mustn't b) may c) must d) can't
10. You........................ touch the exhibits in the museum.
   a) don't have to b) needn't c) must d) mustn't
11. We should .... our children about the environment.
   a) educate b) worry c) forget d) bring
12. This email is urgent. You .... send it at once.
   a) needn't b) don't have c) have to d) have

13. Getting into the control room is forbidden, you .... do so.
a) must b) don't have to c) mustn't d) needn't
14. Put the cork here, but make sure it won't come ....
a) on b) off c) in d) for
15. The .... is the smallest part of the living thing.
a) stomach b) organ c) cell d) virus
16. Would you like to .... us for dinner ?
a) stick b) glue c) attach d) join

b) Reading Comprehension

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:-

Many people have been recently discussing the use of seat belts while driving their cars. Although seat belts have been shown to save lives, people give a number of reasons for not using them. First, many people think that they are a nuisance . They say that the belt is uncomfortable and inhibits freedom of movement. Second, many people who drive in overcrowded streets think that it is not reasonable to fasten a seat belt while you are driving slowly most of the way.

Third, some people are fat and some ladies may be pregnant thinking that fastening seat belts is a great dilemma during driving. Fourth, some people think that they won't have any accidents because they are clever or careful drivers. They think that they are able to avoid accidents. Finally, a lot of people are worried the seat belt may trap them inside their cars and prevent them from running away. If they have an accident, they may be unconscious. In spite of all the above mentioned reasons, statistics prove that wearing seat belts saves lives and prevents serious injuries.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1) Statistics prove that many accidents happen because of ....
a) high speed b) careful drivers
c) not using seat belts d) using seat belts
2) What does the word them refer to?..........................
a) Seat belts b) Cars
c) Lives d) Reasons

3) It's undesirable for........................ women to wear seat belts.

a) married b) thin c) divorced d) pregnant

4) The word " trap" in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to ....

a) prevent from escaping b) escape

c) help to escape d) free

5) The word " nuisance " is synonymous with ....

a) disturbance b) annoyance c) quietness d) both a & b

6) According to the passage, fastening seat belts is harmful to .... ladies .

a) fat and thin b) fat and old

c) fat and pregnant d) fat and weak

7) This passage discusses .... of wearing seat belts.

a) advantages b) disadvantages

c) only merits d) both a and b

8) After accidents, drivers may feel ....

a) conscious b) unconscious

c) faint d) both b and c

3) Translation

a) Translate into Arabic :

To stay healthy, you need to do some physical exercise daily either at home or at the club to be active and fit.

....

....

b) Translate into English :

ندين للأطباء بالكثير لما قاموا به من جهود جباره لعلاج المرضى المصابين بفيروس كورونا ولتوعية الشعب بخطورة المرض.

....

....

4) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

" Improving your skills"

....

....

....

Word Families

seat belt	حزام المقعد	uncomfortable	غير مريح
fastening	ربط	pregnant	حامل
movement	حركة	inhibit	يمنع
nuisance	إزعاج	dilemma	مصيبة
statistics	إحصائيات	mention	يذكر
physical	جسدي	owe to	يدين لـ
efforts	جهود	awareness	وعي

Extra Words كلمات إضافية

combat diseases	يكافح الأمراض	hospital treatment	علاج بالمستشفى
medical help	مساعدة طبية	medical treatment	علاج طبي
herbal treatment	معالجة بالأعشاب	physical activity	نشاط جسدي
symptoms	أعراض	domestic waste	مخلفات منزلية
diagnosis	تشخيص	industrial waste	مخلفات صناعية
breathing problems	مشاكل في التنفس	contaminate rivers	يلوث الأنهار
infectious diseases	أمراض معدية	a quick snack	وجبة سريعة
a speedy recovery	الشفاء العاجل	follow a recipe	يتبع وصفة طعام
spread awareness	نشر الوعي	processed food	يصنع الطعام
food stuffs	المواد الغذائية	pollution levels	مستويات التلوث
exhaust fumes	ادخنة العادم	surroundings	البيئة المحيطة
the balance of nature	توازن الطبيعة	environmentally friendly	صديق للبيئة

Unit 2

Eating around the world الأكل حول العالم

SB pages : 16 .. 25

WB pages : 94 99



Objectives

Reading : An excerpt from Old Jo's Scrap-Bag. An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving by Louisa M. Alcott, Two articles about ways of eating around the world.

Writing : A questionnaire

Listening : Descriptions of international meals .

Language : Comparative and superlative adjectives .

Speaking : Communicating opinions and beliefs .

Life skills : Critical thinking; Respect for diversity; Negotiation

Eating around the world الأكل حول العالم

Part 1 Reading

A) Highlighted words

amount	a quantity of something.	كمية
celebrate	do something funny to show that an event is special.	يحتفل بـ
eat out	have a meal outdoors.	يأكل خارج البيت
get together	meet people and spend time with them.	يقابل
occasion	a time when (sth) special happens.	مناسبه
prepare	get (sth) ready to eat or use.	يجهز/ يعد
serve	give people food and drink.	يخدم
traditional	old ways of doing things that don't change.	تقليدي
popular	liked by all.	محبوب/ شعبي
spicy	hot .	حار/ متبل
salty	tasting of salt.	مالح
rare (meat)	lightly cooked.	ليست جيدة الطبخ (ني)
sweet	having the pleasant taste of sugar.	حلوي

B) New Vocabulary

desserts (n.)	حلويات	Mayflower (n.)	اسم سفينة
pasta (n.)	مكرونة	customers (n.)	زبائن
gather (v.)	يجتمعوا	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ الطعم
old-fashioned (adj.)	موضة قديمة	Thanksgiving (n.)	عيد الشكر
survive (v.)	يعيش/ يحيا	Native Americans (n.)	الأمريكيين الأصليين
events (n.)	أحداث	passengers (n.)	ركاب
remember (v.)	يتذكر	grow (v.)	يزرع
expect (v.)	يتوقع	extract (n.)	مقتطف/ خلاصة

Turkey (n.)	ديك رومي	kitchen (n.)	مطبخ
surprised (adj.)	مندهش	spoons (n.)	ملاعق
worried (adj.)	قلق	dishes (n.)	أطباق
feed (v.)	يطعم	pans (n.)	مقلاه
funny (adj.)	مضحك / مسلي	pots (n.)	أوعية
respect (v.)	يحترم	festival (n.)	مهرجان
the rest (n.)	الباقي	relatives (n.)	أقارب
probably (adv.)	محتمل	rules (n.)	قواعد
vertically (adv)	رأسيا	chopsticks (n.)	عود/ عيدان
rude (adj.)	وقح	foreigners (n.)	أجانب
bowl (n.)	وعاء/ صحن	light food (adj + n)	طعام خفيف
lunchtime (n.)	وقت الغذاء	Russia	روسيا
belief (n.)	اعتقاد	mean (v.)	يعني / يقصد
share (v.)	يشارك	cows (n.)	أبقار
noodles (n.)	شرائح المكرونة	soup (n.)	حساء/ شوربة
beef (n.)	لحم بقري	plates (n.)	أطباق
consider (v.)	يعتبر	differences (n.)	اختلافات
follow (v.)	يتبع	cold meat (n.)	لحمة باردة
mochi (n.)	موتشي (أوز في قوالب)	oysters (n.)	محاره
questionnaire (n.)	استبيان	products (n.)	منتجات
details (n.)	تفاصيل	options (n.)	اختيارات
distant (adj.)	بعيد	types (n.)	انواع
herring (n.)	سمك مملح/ رنجة	grapes leaves	عنب أوراق الأشجار

C) Synonyms المرادفات

Word		Synonyms
amount	كمية	quantity / total / mass / size / sum / dose
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	commemorate / salute / remember
delicious	لذيذ	tasty / flavourful / mouth- appetizing / watering

prepare	يعد / يجهز	make ready / put together / lay / arrange
popular	شعبي / محبوب	well liked / in favour / admired / approved / fashionable
occasion	مناسبة	moment / time / event / happening / incident
spicy	حار / متبل	hot / tasty / peppery / flavoruful
traditional	تقليدي	conventional / customary / regular / normal / habitual / usual / conservative
survive	يحيا / يعيش	live / remain / last / persist / exist
sweet	حلو	sugary / agreeable / pleasant / delightful
respect	يحترم	esteem / admire / honour / praise/ regard
worried	قلق	anxious / troubled / upset / disturbed
rude	وقح	ill-mannered / impolite / cheeky / ill-bred
foreigner	أجنبي	immigrant / incomer / non-native
probably	محتمل	doubtless / maybe / perhaps / possibly
surprised	مندهش	astonished / speechless / amazed/stunned
customer	زبون	shopper / consumer / buyer / purchaser / patron / client
extract	مقتطف	selection / piece / passage / quotation
rule	قاعدة	regulation / law / order / decree
feed	يطعم	cater for / nourish / sustain
belief	اعتقاد	faith / trust / confidence
festival	احتفال	carnival / celebration / ceremony
grow	يزرع	cultivate / produce / raise / farm / sow
mean	يقصد / يعني	intend / aim / plan / design / purpose /
expect	يتوقع	anticipate / predict / foresee / forecast

D) Antonyms

cheap	رخيص	expensive	غالي
popular	شعبى/ محبوب	unpopular	نادر/ غير شعبى
well-cooked	مطهي جيد	rare	غير جيد الطهى

hot	حار	cold	بارد
spicy	متبل/ له طعم	insipid	لا طعم له / بلا نكهه
traditional	تقليدي	documentary	وثائقي
delicious	لذيذ الطعم	tasteless	بلا طعم
old- fashioned	موضة قديمة	fashionable	مساير للموضة
survive	يعيش/ ينجوا	die	يموت
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	ignore	يتجاهل
remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى
respect	يحترم	despise	يحتقر
share	حصة او سهم / جزء	whole	كل

E Prepositions

funny about	مضحك بخصوص	worried about	قلق بشأن
arrive in / at	يصل الي	amount of	كمية من
look after	يعتني بـ	lots of	كثير من
walk into	يدخل	able to	قادر علي
get out	يخرج	rude to	وقح لـ
eat with	يأكل مع	way of	طريقة لـ
respect for	احترام لـ	find out	يكتشف
ask about	يسأل عن	careful about	حريص علي
ask for	يطلب	wait for	ينتظر
made from	مصنوع من	part of	جزء من

F Idiomatic Expressions

▪ get ready to	يستعد لـ
▪ grow food	يزرع الطعام
▪ make breakfast	يعد الافطار
▪ fall asleep	يغلبه النعاس
▪ walk out of the kitchen	يمشي خارج المطبخ
▪ decide what to do	يقرر ما يفعله
▪ a large amount of	كمية كبيرة من
▪ it is normal	انه من المعتاد

• that sounds nice	يبدو جميلا
• make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
• make notes	يدون ملاحظات
• but for me	ولكن بالنسبة لي
• show respect to	يظهر احترام لـ
• at midnight	في منتصف الليل
• have a meal	يتناول وجبه
• achieved a great deal of popularity	حقق شعبية كبيره
• at a time	في المرة الواحده
• it's fun to eat out	انه لمن المتعه ان تأكل خارج البيت
• it is considered (regarded)	يعد/ يعتبر
• keep out of the way	افسح الطريق
• take place = happen = occur	يحدث
• on the menu	في القائمة
• follow rules	يتبع القواعد والتعليمات
• on New Year's Day	في عيد رأس السنة
• I'm a bit worried	إنتابني بعض القلق

G) Word Families

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
respect يحترم	respect احترام	respected محترم	respectably باحترام
spice يتبل	spices توابل	spicy متبل	....
cook يطهي	cooking الطهي	cooked مطبوخ	....
surprise يدهش	surprise دهشه/ مفاجاه	surprised مندهش	surprisingly بدهشة
celebrate يحتفل	celebration احتفال	celebrated مشهور	....
believe يعتقد	belief اعتقاد	believable معقول	believably يمكن تصديقه
popularize يعمم / ينشر	popularity شعبية	popular محبوب / شعبي	popularly بصفة عامة

specialise يتخصص	speciality خصوصيه specialisation تخصص	special خاص	specially بصفة خاصة
know يعرف	knowing / knowledge معرفة	known معروف	knowingly بدراية

H Language Notes

special : not usual. خاص (به مميزات تميزه عن مثيله)

private : for one person or a chosen group. خاص (يملكه فرد او مجموعه محدده)

- The president has a special car.
- I don't have a private car.

festival : for special events like musical performances. مهرجان مثل الحفلات الموسيقيه

ceremony : for formal and traditional acts. للأحداث الرسمية والتقليديه (الزفاف/ الوفاة)

- Sham-el- Nessim is an Egyptian festival.
- I enjoyed attending your wedding ceremony.

so much to do = such a lot to do

- There is so much to do today.
- There is such a lot to do today.

remember: be able to bring to one's mind. يتذكر(شخص/شيء)

remind : to make (sb) think of (sth) forgotten. يذكر شخص ما بشيء ما قد نسيه

- I can remember people's faces well not names.
- Please, remind me of tomorrow 's appointment.

expect : believe that it will يتوقع
wait for : stay until (sb/ sth) arrives. ينتظر

- I am expecting the bus to arrive soon.
- If I am a bit late, can you wait for me ?

let + inf : يدع/ يسمح
allow + to + inf : يسمح بـ

- Let me park here.
- Allow me to park here.

service : a formal way of referring to a tip.
طريقة رسمية للأشارة الي البقشيش
tip : a small sum of money. بقشيش

- Does the bill include a service charge?
- London taxi drivers always expect a tip.

rare = raw : not cooked enough نِي (غير جيدة الطهي)
row : a line of people صف/ طابور

- I 'd like to have my food raw/ rare
- I want to sit at the first row.

get together = meet يقابل
together with = in addition to بالاضافة الي

- Let's get together at 7 pm .
- I enclose my order together with a cheque.

reach + مفعول يصل الي (بدون حرف جر)
arrive in + مفعول (يصل الي المدن الكبيرة)
arrive at + مفعول يصل الي (المدن الصغيرة والاماكن العامة)
get to + مفعول يصل الي

- We will reach Paris in the early morning.
- I arrived at the club at 5 O' clock.
- How can I get to the airport, Please?

A)Expressing general beliefs التعبير عن الاراء العامة	B) Expressing personal beliefs التعبير عن الاراء الشخصية
• It is believed that........ • It is thought that...... يعتقد ان... • As you probably know كما تعرف.	• Personally , شخصيا • In my opinion , في رأيي • But for me , ولكن بالنسبة لي • I understand that افهم و أدرك أن

The Reading Text SB Page (17) Lesson 1

An Old- Fashioned Thanksgiving

In September 1620, a ship called the Mayflower arrived in North America with 102 passengers. Many died, but some were able to grow food and survive with help from Native Americans. Thanksgiving is a day when families get together to remember these events. It is celebrated in the USA every year on the fourth Thursday in November.

In 1882, Lousia M Alcott wrote a short story called An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving. Here is an extract:

When they woke, there was still a large amount of snow outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children.

Now about dinner, she said as they all finished eating. " Ma said that we could have whatever liked, but she did not expect us to have a traditional Thanksgiving dinner."

"Have you ever cooked a turkey?" asked Roxy.

"Ma said I should decide what to do" replied Tilly. All your children have to do is keep out of the way, and let Prue and me work."

The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to prepare the big meal, they got out all the spoons, dishes, pots and pans that they could find.

"Now sister, we will have dinner at five", said Tilly. "Pa will be here by that time and he will be surprised to find us ready to serve the food. There is such a lot to do, and I am a bit worried about the turkey. It is so big! " I know", said Prue. "I fed it all summer and now it will feed me," she laughed.

The Reading Text SB Page (21) Lesson 4

Read the article. Can you find three ways that people show respect when they have meals together?

A Personally, I think it is important to respect our older relatives. When South Korean families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The rest of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this shows your respect for the most important people in your family.

B As you probably know, people in China usually use chopsticks to eat their food, However, you need to be careful about what you do with them when you are eating there. It is considered very rude to put your chopsticks vertically into your bowl of food, for example. I understand that this is a Chinese tradition, but for me, foreigners who do this don't mean to be rude at all.

C In my opinion, lunchtime isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in Russia it is thought that people should eat their largest meal of day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some light food, such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russia.

Listening:

Descriptions of international meals

[Set in audioscript box] Audioscript

Amy : So, did you ask your parents about visiting our home for Thanksgiving, Hoda?

Hoda : Yes. They like me to try new things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very curious about the food you eat.

Amy : You'll love the food at Thanksgiving, Hoda. Have you had turkey before? It's a lot like chicken but it's very big.

Hoda : Well, I like chicken, so that should be okay. What else do you have?

Amy : We have a special kind of bread, called cornbread. It's

delicious. And we have sweet potatoes. They're like normal potatoes, but much nicer.

Hoda : That sounds great. What do you have for dessert?

Amy : My mum makes the most wonderful pumpkin pie. It's very sweet and heavy. Sometimes I fall asleep after I eat it, so I'll try not to eat too much.

Hoda : Now I'm feeling hungry.

Amy : Me too. But the best thing about Thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to meet and catch up with friends and family. That's why we're all really looking forward to seeing you.

Hoda : Great. I can't wait!

[Set in video script box] Video script

People in different countries celebrate different festivals, but they all cook special meals for their families when they're celebrating together. Let's look at three examples of special meals from around the world.

Many Egyptians celebrate the festival of Eid-al-Adha every year. The most popular meal to eat on this occasion is a traditional fattah. Egyptian families usually eat fattah for breakfast. In Britain, Christmas is the most popular festival of the year. British families come together on this occasion to eat a special meal, which is usually roasted turkey with potatoes and other vegetables.

And, finally, let's go to China where the New Year is the most important festival of the year. Families like to have lots of different things on the table when they get together to eat at Chinese New Year. This usually includes spring rolls, noodles, fish and chicken

Listening [Audio icon] 1.8 1

Listen to someone talking about meals from three different countries. Match the pictures with the names of the meals.

Nasi goreng is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words nasi goreng mean 'fried rice' in Indonesian. Many people believe that Nasi goreng is one of the spiciest meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's simply the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is

made by frying rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns to the pan. It's a bit saltier than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually cheaper than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it either in restaurants or from people who cook food on the side of the road.

Oysters are a type of shellfish that people dig out of the earth under the sea. They're rarer than most other types of seafood and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months, thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special foods you can eat. This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the menu in French restaurants.

Mochi are sweet, round rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most popular type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand years ago and people thought that they brought good luck. Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions. For example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, flat, white mocha is the most popular type of mochi to eat.

[Audio icon] 1.11

3) Listen and answer the questions about food in the UK.

[Set in audio script box] Audio script

The UK did not use to be known for its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and chips. The fish and potatoes are fried and they are usually very salty. Fish and chips is usually cheaper than most other takeaway food, too. The British also like spicy food.

Indian food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular. One of the most traditional dishes in the UK is roast lamb, which people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and

vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more than 320,000 ice creams. They mostly eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is hotter.

[Audio icon] 1.11 SB page 20]

1) Listen to an expert talking about questionnaires and make notes in your notebook [Set in audio script box] Audio script

When you're writing a questionnaire, you need to ask the right questions. Some questions are a lot more useful than others. And, very often, small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of difference.

Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy to understand, so it's always helpful to use simple language. If you use complicated language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.

Secondly, it's important to use words with clear meanings. Words like 'most' and 'many' mean different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as 'almost all' and 'almost none' instead.

Thirdly, don't have too many options. People get confused when there are more than six options to choose from.

Don't ask personal questions, like questions about money. People don't like talking about these things.

Remember to ask one question at a time. Don't put two questions into one, for example: 'How often do you eat out with your family?' Some people will eat out quite often, but not with their family. And others might eat with their family all the time, but only at home.

Finally, make sure the answers to your questions are easy to remember. Don't ask about events in the distant past, especially if they are about something that was boring.

Then, when you know the questions you want to ask, think about the best time to ask people. If you're going to ask people about a recent event, for example, do it before they start to forget.

Exercises based on Vocabulary

A) Choose the TWO correct answers of the Five options given:

1. Thanksgiving is a day when families .... to remember the survival of some American passengers.
   a) get together b) discuss c) meet
   d) celebrate e) cooperate
2. My sister is very .... in her ideas and opinions.
   a) traditional b) punctual c) optimistic
   d) conventional e) fictional
3. Most people fall **asleep** after eating. The antonym of " **asleep** " is ....
   a) aware b) alert c) awake
   d) unconscious e) pessimistic
4. Oysters are a .... type of fish, eaten for seven months of the year.
   a) scarce b) rare c) ordinary
   d) common e) normal
5. Do you like .... food or not?
   a) tasteless b) disgusting c) spicy
   d) seasoned e) roasted
6. The twins .... their mother in many ways.
   a) look like b) love c) adore
   d) resemble e) embrace
7. Babies are .... about everything around them.
   a) curious b) strange c) interested
   d) indifferent e) ignorant
8. Sweet potatoes are like .... potatoes, but much nicer.
   a) usual b) normal c) abnormal
   d) casual e) factual
9. To .... means to cook food in hot fat or oil in a shallow pan.
   a) roast b) fry c) brown
   d) season e) ferment
10. Don't use complicated language which is too difficult to ....
    a) hear b) understand c) grasp
    d) catch e) figure

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d:

1) We .... Sham- el- Nessim in spring.
a) attend b) celebrate c) remember d) remind

2) I have met him on two different...................... .
a) events b) incidents c) occasions d) episodes

3) The whole family.... .... to enjoy a large amount of food.
a) gathers b) celebrates c) serves d) shows

4) To ....means to have a meal outside your home.
a) pick out b) put out c) get out d) eat out

5) I would like to have my food fully....................... not raw.
a) boiled b) fried c) cooked d) cooking

6) We usually eat ....after main courses or meals.
a) vegetables b) spices c) fish d) desserts

7) Are you .... ready to start work?
a) doing b) making c) getting d) giving

8) A ....is presented as food to North America on Thanksgiving and Christmas.
a) rabbit b) turkey c) chicken d) robin

9) Before the guests arrived, we had..................a big meal.
a) done b) prepared c) welcomed d) received

10) Fortunately, not all the crew of the ship died but half of them ....
a) surpassed b) revived c) divided d) survived

11) It is ....to give presents on happy occasions such as weddings and birthdays.
a) traditional b) difficult c) probable d) impossible

12) We often get......................at weekends to enjoy each other's company.
a) up b) out c) at d) together

13) Who ....customers at that shop over there?
a) waits b) serves c) talks d) shares

14) I drink soup with a large ....
a) knife b) fork c) spoon d) stick

15) This area is interested in....................a lot of wheat all the year round.
a) growing b) harvesting c) watering d) cutting

16) When does this event take ....?

a) after b) up c) off d) place

17) While eating, Nada........................asleep.

a) dropped b) felt c) fell d) became

18) We should show ....for older people and relatives.

a) hatred b) respect c) despise d) rudeness

19) This line is........................,it is at angle of 90 from the ground.

a) vertical b) vertically c) diagonal d) diagonally

20) It has been customary for people to eat ....food or meals in the evening.

a) heavy b) toxic c) organic d) light

21) First, I will have soup,........................by spaghetti.

a) follow b) following c) followed d) follows

22) It is time for dinner. Please, sit ....the table beside me.

a) on b) at c) into d) over

23) What ....do you follow when you are eating?

a) roles b) rolls c) ruling d) rules

24) It is normal to ....food from one plate in Ethiopia.

a) share b) shape c) cook d) spoil

25) Sorry for being rude. I don't ....to be like that.

a) understand b) recognise

c) mean d) realise

26) You are diabetic, so you should be........................about what you eat or drink.

a) careless b) careful c) worried d) happy

27) During the teacher's explanations, try to ....some notes to be read later on.

a) do b) give c) draw d) make

28) If you come home late, try not to.....................so much noise.

a) make b) let c) allow d) do

29) By ...., the bride's family pays half of the costs of the wedding.

a) chance b) accident c) tradition d) mistake

30) We keep........................... on farms for their milk.

a) donkeys b) dolphins c) dogs d) cows

31) ....is a kind of liquid food, made by cooking meat and vegetables in water.

a) Salad b) Macaroni c) Noddles d) Soup

32) I caught a/ an ....last week, but I am better now.

a) fish b) bus c) cold d) animal

33) I am strongly for herbal medicine. I have a strong........................in it .

a) memory b) believe c) opinion d) belief

34) We are connected either by blood or marriage, so we are ....

a) foreigners b) relatives c) strangers d) guests

35) Sadly, this restaurant does not have vegetable curry.......................... the menu.

a) in b) at c) on d) off

36) I use a lot of herbs and ....in my cooking to give flavour نكهة to food.

a) spaces b) spices c) spicy d) spiders

37) I think full medames is the most ....meal in Egypt.

a) rare b) scare c) expensive d) popular

38) My uncle is so ....,we were laughing all the time.

a) strict b) cheerless c) pessimistic d) funny

39) Until now, I have not decided.................to do.

a) how b) when c) what d) why

40) What is the..........................income next year, do you think?

a) expect b) expectation c) expecting d) expected

41) In Japan, on the New Year, people.................. special cakes from sweet rice.

a) make b) do c) give d) play

42) A herring is a kind of salted ....

a) lemon b) water c) meat d) fish

43) My friend gave me a bunch of ....to eat.

a) flowers b) banana c) grapes d) apples

44) This food is very delicious. The ....is very strong.

a) kind b) smell c) type d) smile

45) She looked carefully at all the...................before deciding on her career.

a) optimism b) pessimism c) optional d) options

46) What about this lemonade? That.......................nice.

a) smell b) sounds c) forms d) feel

47) ....my opinion, breakfast is the best meal of the day.
a) From b) At c) In d) With

48) ...., I think that nursing staff deserve more money.
a) Person b) Personally c) Personality d) personal

49) The .... of the New year is celebrated with special food.
a) begin b) endless c) started d) start

50) I read an..........................from a historical film.
a) extraction b) extracted c) extracting d) extract

51) Is there any other .... to get to that mountain ?
a) way b) street c) lane d) rail

52. She might be .... alive artificially or she'll die.
a) taken b) kept c) looked d) knocked

53. I'm at a loss, so I haven't .... what to do yet.
a) spoken b) decided c) whispered d) declined

54. Don't worry about that food. It's salt- ....
a) free b) empty c) full d) filled

55. .... come to our country to enjoy beautiful scenery and unique position.
a) Farmers b) Foreigners c) Writers d) Readers

56. If it snows, I'll .... go skiing.
a) probability b) probable c) probably d) possible

57. Please, give the duck a .... of bread, just a small piece.
a) lot b) bit c) bar d) bag

58. I have read a book, ... Street life in London.
a) calls b) calling c) called d) is called

59. Have you finished ...., mother ? We are hungry.
a) washing b) shopping c) ironing d) cooking

60. There are only a few students in the class today. What about the ....?
a) best b) risk c) rest d) fist

B) Translation

a) Translate into Arabic :

1. All the world nations need to cooperate to face the recent problems and find urgent solutions to them.

....

....

2. Some writers have a distinctive style of writing that attracts attention. They possess the power of inventiveness.

....

....

....

3. Air pollution is the primary cause of lung cancer and chest diseases. It has become a severe problem in industrial areas.

....

....

....

4. Life in the countryside , away from the smoke of factories and the crowded means of transport, is really enjoyable .

....

....

....

b) Translate into English :

١. كتب صديقي رواية طويلة عن طفل عاش طفولة بائسه ولكنه عمل بجد وأنشأ ورشة صغيرة تحولت لاحقا إلى مصنع كبير.

....

....

....

٢. ينبغي أن نتوقف عن إلقاء نفايات المصانع السامة في النيل لانه شريان الحياة في مصر والمصدر الوحيد لماء الشرب وري الأراضي الزراعية .

....

....

....

٣. لا تستطيع ان تقود سيارة دون الحصول علي رخصة قيادة وإلا سوف تكون معرض للعقاب بغرامه كبيره أو السجن.

....

....

....

٤. يعد الاهتمام بالبيئة من حولنا وتقليل التلوث قضية عالمية ينبغي العمل علي حلها وهذا يتطلب تعاون جميع دول العالم وإصدار قوانين عالميه.

....

....

....

c) Writing

2) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

"What people do to celebrate Sham-el -Nesseem"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Part (II) Focus on Language

Comparison of adjectives مقارنة الصفات

١- الصفة تصف الاسم (الفاعل) والظرف يصف الحدث (الفعل)

- Ramy is quick at running.
- He runs quickly.

٢- تأتى الصفة بعد{ V. to Be} :

- Everyone was happy.
- The flat is small.

٣- تأتى الصفة بعد الأفعال الآتية والتي تساوي في المعني{ V. to Be} :

seem / appear / become / get / stay / look / feel / taste / smell.

- Everyone seemed happy.
- The situation has become serious.

٤- هناك صفات قليلة تنتهي بـ (ly) مثل :

- friendly ودي / lovely جميل / likely محتمل / lively حيوي
- silly / ugly قبيح / lonely fatherly أبوي / motherly.

- He is a friendly man.

ولكي تصبح ظرف تضاف *in (a / an + adj. – ly + way)*

- He behaves in a friendly way.

٥- هناك كلمات تستخدم كصفة وظرف في آن واحد مثل :

- hard / late / fast / high / straight / daily
- weekly / monthly / yearly / early.

- This bed is hard. (adj) = (rigid)
- I tried hard but I didn't succeed. (adv) = (energetically)

- الصفات التى تنتهى بـ ed- او ing- :

أ) الصفات التي تنتهى بـ ed تستخدم لوصف شعور او تجربة مر بها انسان او حيوان :

(amazed/ interested / excited / frightened / puzzled / bored)

➲ On watching that film , I felt frightened .

➲ The bird , in the cage , is puzzled .

ب) الصفات التي تنتهى بـ ing تستخدم لوصف شعور يسببه شخص ما او شئ ما :

(amazing / interesting / exciting / confusing / worrying / boring)

➲ Mona is a confusing girl .

➲ The report was rather worrying .

٧- بعض الصفات تاتي بمفردها بدون اسم ورائها :

أ) صفات تبدأ بحرف (a) مثل :

(alive/ alike / alone / afraid / awake / aware / ashamed / asleep)

➲ I was asleep when it began to rain .

➲ The girl was left alone .

ب) صفات تصف الصحة والمشاعر مثل :

(ill / well / fine / upset / glad / sorry)

➲ I feel sorry for the loss of my mobile .

➲ She is fine today .

٨- يمكن استخدام أسماء كصفات وهذه الاسماء دائماً مفرداً.

➲ I attend evening classes.

➲ I had a three-week holiday in Spain.

أنواع الصفات

١) صفة قصيرة

Adjective الصفة	Comparative المقارنة الصفة + r / er / ier + than	Superlative التفضيل the الصفة + st / est / iest
tall	taller than	the tallest
hot	hotter than	the hottest
nice	nicer than	the nicest
pretty	prettier than	the prettiest

* The elephant is bigger than the camel.
* Ola's grandpa is the oldest man in the town.

الصفات التى تنتهى بـ (y) و قبلها ساكن تحذف (y) و تحول الي (ier / iest) :

(happy / lucky / lovely / pretty / heavy / dirty / tidy / easy / silly)

٢) صفة طويلة

Adjective الصفة	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
	more / less } + صفة / ظرف + than	the most / the least } + الصفة
beautiful	more beautiful than	the most beautiful
expensive	less expensive than	the least expensive

* Sally is the most beautiful girl of her friends.
* My father speaks English more fluently than my uncle .

٣) صفات شاذة **Irregular comparatives and Superlatives**

Adjective/ Adverb الصفة / الحال	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
good / well	better than	the best
bad / badly	worse than	the worst
much/ many/a lot of	more than	the most
little	less than	the least
far	farther/ further than	the farthest / furthest

➲ No boy in the class is better than Adel.

➲ Nothing in life is worse than poverty .



يمكن استخدام the + adj. + er بشرط عدم وجود than عند المقارنة بين اثنين :

➲ **Who is the taller, Ali or Ramy ?**

➲ **Of the two sisters , Rana is the taller .**

صفات تستخدم مع (more / most) فقط و هي الصفات التي تنتهي بـ :

ful / less :	(useful / helpful / careful / hopeless)
ing / ed :	(boring / willing / annoyed / surprised)

وهناك صفات آخري من هذا النوع مثل :

(correct / exact / certain / normal / frequent / recent / famous / modern / afraid / eager / foolish / smart)

➲ Today climbing equipment is more modern than that of the past .

هناك صفات تتكون من مقطعين مثل :

(cruel / clever / stupid / narrow / gentle / friendly / quiet / simple / polite ....etc)

توضع في المقارنة من الدرجة الثانية كالآتي :

adj. + er + than OR more + adj. + than

توضع في اسلوب التفضيل كالآتي :

The + adj. + est OR the most + adj

➲ Monica is cleverer / more clever than Carol

the farthest ....from أبعد من / عن

the nearest ....to الأقرب لـ

➲ Aswan is the farthest city from Cairo.

➲ Benha is the nearest city to Cairo

1) elder / eldest

- elder / eldest + noun (اكبر من / الأكبر) داخل الاسرة
- elder (not followed by than) لا تتبع بـ (than) و لا تستخدم في المقارنة
- older + than (للعاقل و غير العاقل)
- the oldest of + ضمائر / أشخاص
- the oldest in + مكان

➲ Heba is my elder / eldest sister.

➲ Ahmed is older than Mahmoud .

➲ He's the oldest of his friends .

➲ He's the oldest in his class .

2) most + adj. = very (بدون the)

➲ The article I've just read was most interesting . *(very)*

➲ I like the last song best . *(very much)*

➲ I love all my family , but my mum most of all .

3) Comparison of equality مقارنة المساواة فى درجة الصفة

the same ⟶ as + adj. / adv. + as (الإثبات)

not the same ⟶ not as ....as

OR not so ....as (النفي)

➲ The tree is as tall as the house .
➲ The tree is not as / so tall as the house.
➲ My jacket is as expensive / cheap as yours .
➲ This car is less expensive than yours.

4) a bit / much / a lot / a little / rather / far / slightly .

توضع قبل الصفة من الدرجة الثانية لتحديد مقدارها

➲ Going by bus is a lot cheaper than going by plane.
➲ The bus arrived a bit later than it was supposed to.

٥) ولكن تستخدم " by far " بمعني الي حد كبير قبل أسلوب التفضيل فقط لتأكيد الفرق.

by far + superlative

➲ He is by far the best student in the class.

6) The + comparative .... , the + comparative...........

تستخدم لتعبر عن المقارنة بين حدثين / لتعبر عن تغييرات تتم في نفس الوقت .

- **The more ...., the more ....** كلما ......كلما
- **The less ...., the less ....**
- **The more ...., the less.........................**
- **The less ...., the more ....**

➲ The more you eat , the fatter you become.
➲ The slower you drive , the safer you are .

7) Comparative + and + Comparative

تستخدم لتعبر عن تغيير مستمر بالنقص والزيادة

➲ He is growing fatter and fatter every day.

٨) أستخدم أسلوب التفضيل مع الصفات القصيرة و الطويلة عند استخدام (ever)

Sub	+ the least + adj. is + the most + adj. was + the + adj + est +	}	فاعل + have / has ever + P.P.

➲ I have never seen such an exciting match. **(ever)**
➲ It is the most exciting match I've ever seen.

٩ - عند البدء بـ (...) No (girl / boy / question / man / river

يتم تحويل أسلوب التفضيل إلى المقارنة من الدرجة الثانية باستخدام أحد الصيغ الآتية :

الصفة	+ er	+ than	
more	+ الصفة	+ than	
as	الصفة	as	

➲ The last question is the easiest one.

➲ No question is easier than the last one.

OR No question is as easy as the last one .

١٠ - أفعال تليها صفات محددة مع مراعاة المعني :

go	○ deaf / blind / bad / rotten / dead معطل ○ missing مفقود / wrong / mad

➲ My computer has gone wrong again.

go / turn	○ colours (white / black / red...........)

➲ The traffic lights turned / went green and I pulled away.

○ become / come / grow / turn out أتضح	صفة او عبارة اسمية +
○ keep / seem / sound / appear	

➲ The hotel seems nice / a nice place .

11) Compound adjectives : الصفات المركبة

- تعمل كصفة مفردة مفصولة بـ hyphen (-) شرطة ومسبوقة بـ a / an.
- يصبح الاسم الجمع في الصفة المركبة مفرد .
- يستخدم هذا النوع من الصفات مع الاعداد والاوزان .

➲ She's sixteen years old.

➲ She's a sixteen-year-old girl.

➲ This book has got eighty pages.

➲ This is an eighty-page book.

١٢- يستخدم أسلوب التفضيل بعد ('s) الملكية .

➲ The world's largest / deepest ocean is the Pacific .

Exercises based on Grammar

a) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The flatter a country is, the .... the risk of floods is.
   a) great b) greatly c) greatest d) greater
2. Huda is the quickest typist .... all.
   a) in b) of c) off d) with
3. The harder you study, the .... marks you get.
   a) higher b) highest c) high d) highly
4. There are .... people in Scotland than in England.
   a) few b) fewer c) many d) little
5. The bus arrived .... later than it was supposed to.
   a) a bit b) most c) as d) so
6. Peter's office is .... than George's.
   a) spacious b) as spacious
   c) most spacious d) more spacious
7. The .... he gets, the wiser he becomes.
   a) old b) older c) oldest d) elderly
8. The Mediterranean diet is .... than any other.
   a) healthiest b) health c) healthier d) healthy
9. Her cake was .... than anyone else's in the baking competition.
   a) good b) as good c) the best d) better
10. I'd prefer to go fishing .... than go jogging.
    a) as b) better c) rather d) so
11. None of this year's films were .... the one we saw last night.
    a) as interesting b) less interesting
    c) more interesting d) as interesting as
12. Sally has got .... beautiful garden of all in my neighborhood.
    a) more b) most c) the most d) less
13. The ferry isn't .... convenient as the hydrofoil.
    a) than b) as c) more d) most
14. Tom's car is faster than mine but Mike's is the fastest .... all.
    a) in b) than c) as d) of

15. Being the most popular singer in the world , he sells.......................... records than any other singer .
    a) more b) most c) as d) so
16. The newly married couple loved each other ....
    a) deepest b) deep c) deeply d) deeper
17. The older she gets ,the .. ..experienced she becomes.
    a) most b) much c) little d) more
18. Of my three brothers , Mazen is ....
    a) elder b) the eldest c) older d) old
19. The weather today is good but .... perfect than yesterday.
    a) less b) many c) least d) little
20. The red vase costs half......................... the blue one.
    a) as much b) so much c) as much as d) so much as
21. I hope you are feeling .... now .
    a) good b) the best c) best d) better
22. I'm going to Lake Nasser next week. We're going ....than usual.
    a) early b) most earlier c) earlier d) earliest
23. The ring was .... more expensive than I had expected.
    a) very b) too c) far d) less
24. The online news is ....to read than newspapers .
    a) quick b) quicker c) quickest d) more quick
25. This book is .... more expensive than yours .
    a) much b) many c) most d) mostly
26. I didn't arrive as .... as I expected
    a) earlier b) earliest c) more early d) early
27. I have a bicycle with two wheels. This means I have ....
    a) a two-wheels bicycle b) a two-wheel bicycle
    c) two-wheels bicycle d) two-wheel bicycle
28. I think that apologizing is .... you can do
    a) not as much as b) a little
    c) as far as d) the least

29. Ola and Ali are of the same height. They are .... each other.
a) as tall as b) taller than c) so tall as d) the tallest
30. The more it rains , the .... the roads become .
a) mud b) muddy c) muddiest d) muddier
31. It's the most delicious dish I have .... had .
a) never b) ever c) still d) yet
32. The faster you drive , the .... you arrive .
a) early b) earliest c) earlier d) best
33. She is .... towards the baby than her sister .
a) gentler b) most gentle c) gentle d) gentlest
34. The black car is .... expensive than the blue one .
a) little b) the most c) least d) less
35. It is the most exciting book I have .... read .
a) ever b) yet c) still d) never
36. Of all the shirts in the shop, he bought the .... one .
a) cheap b) most cheaper c) cheapest d) cheaper
37. The .... experience in my life was when I saw a big bear in the wild.
a) less frightening b) least frightening
c) more frightening d) most frightening
38. You should buy the green trousers. They are the .... in the shop.
a) expensive b) less expensive
c) most expensive d) least expensive
39. Tamer is a much calmer person than Omar, so before their exams. Omar was much .... Tamer.
a) more nervous than b) least nervous
c) most nervous d) more nervous
40. This English exercise is the .... one in the book!
a) more challenging than b) more challenging
c) most challenging d) challenging
41. Of the two questions, this is the.........................
a) easier b) more easy c) easiest d) easy

42. He is the.........................of the two players.

a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) most fast

43. The two brothers are nearly the same height, but one of them is

....

a) as tall b) much taller c) a bit taller d) so tall

44. Very few tourists visit this place. It is the .... popular site in France.

a) most b) fewest c) less d) least

45. Have you got any idea about ....part of all the oceans?

a) the deepest b) deeper c) deep d) as deep as

46. How..........................are you at English?

a) the better b) the best c) well d) good

47. Football is............................popular game in Egypt.

a) more b) most c) less d) the most

48. The writer's new book is his..........................one.

a) public b) most popular c) most d) more

49. He is.....................exhausted, so he can't come to the meeting.

a) very b) extreme c) extremely d) a bit

50. He thinks that the richer he becomes, the .... he will be.

a) happiest b) most happy c) more happy d) happier

b) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:-

" A famous festival in your country "

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Part (III)

The story " King Lear"

New Vocabulary

cruel	قاس	sword	سيف
adult	بالغ	income	دخل
hide	يخفي	loyalty	ولاء/ اخلاص
honest	أمين	deceive	يخدع
trust	يثق	lie	يكذب
exist (v.)	يخرج	send away	يطرد/ ينفي
dangerous	خطير	at the moment	في تلك اللحظة
angry	غضبان	sad	حزين
pleased	سعيد	serious	جاد/ خطير
surprised	مندهش	worried	قلق
deserve	يستحق	inheritance	أرث
shout	يصرخ	characters	شخصيات
support	مساعدة / عون	steer	يقود / يوجه

[In King Lear's Palace]

France : Cordelia, it is time to leave your country now. Say goodbye to your sisters.

Cordelia : Goneril and Regan, I am sad to leave you both.
My heart is broken. Be good to our father. If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him! Please look after him well.

Goneril : Don't tell us what to do, Cordelia.

Regan : Yes, go to your husband. You've failed to do what your father asked you to do. Now, you've got what you **deserve**.

Cordelia : I don't know what you are planning, sisters, but remember everyone discovers the **truth** in the end. Goodbye!

France : Come with me, my dear Cordelia. ***[The King of France and Cordelia leave.]***

Goneril : Sister Regan, we must talk. I think our father will leave here tonight.

Regan : I'm sure he will, and he'll leave with you. Next month, he'll stay with my husband Cornwall and I.

Goneril : Our father always loved Cordelia the most, and a poor decision has made him **send** her **away**.

Regan : He is becoming a little mad in his old age.

Goneril : Even when he was younger and healthy, he was a difficult man. So we must be prepared for what ill health and old age will bring.

Regan : He was angry when he sent Kent away today. He will probably be angry more often in the future.

Goneril : Let's sit together and talk. If our father still has some power, his **anger** will become a problem for us.

Regan : You are right. Let's think about what we can do.

Goneril : We must do something, and quickly. *At the Duke of Gloucester's Castle. Edmund enters with a letter.]*

Edmund : My father Gloucester says that his first son, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. But why should I not have my **inheritance** just because I'm twelve or fourteen months younger than my brother? Is it just because I'm the second son? I'm just as strong and kind as my brother, and as clever too. Well, elder brother, Edgar, I will have your land. Our father loves me, his younger son, as much as he loves you. And I have a letter here. If this letter **succeeds,** then Edmund the younger son will beat the older son Edgar! *[Gloucester enters.]*

Gloucester: All Edmund, my son! Have you heard? The King has sent Kent away! And the King of France has left with Cordelia! And the King has left the palace tonight without his powers! This has all happened so quickly!

[Gloucester notices Edmund hiding the letter.] What are you doing Edmund?

Edmund : Nothing, father.

Gloucester : Why are you trying to hide that letter? What's in it?

Edmund : Nothing, sir.

Gloucester : Then, why did you hide it in your pocket? Let me see it.

Edmund : Please forgive me, father. It is a letter from my brother Edgar that I haven't finished reading yet; but I don't think you should read it.

Gloucester : Let me see that!

Edmund : OK, but I hope he only wrote this to test me and my **loyalty** to my family,

Gloucester : *[Reads the letter.]*

When we respect older people too much, it makes it hard for the young to live well. Our parents keep our money from us until we are too old to enjoy it Older people only have power because we give it to them. Come and see me, so that we can discuss this. If our father were dead, you could enjoy half his ***income,*** *and be loved by your brother Edgar.'*

Did my son Edgar write this letter? When did you receive this? Who brought it?

Edmund : It wasn't brought to me, sir. I found it. It was thrown in through my bedroom window.

Gloucester : Are you sure the writing is your brother's?

Edmund : Yes, it is his handwriting, father.

Gloucester : Has he ever talked to you about this before?

Edmund : No, never. But I have often heard him say that when a son becomes an adult, he should be given some of his father's income.

Gloucester : Oh, what a cruel son! God and find him, Edmund. Where is he?

Edmund : I don't know, father. Please, don't be angry with my brother. Let's find out what he meant, then you can decide what to do. I am sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that.

Gloucester : Do you really think so?

Edmund : Yes. Listen , I have a plan. I will hide you somewhere tonight. I will discuss it with my brother and you can listen to our conversations.
Then you will know what he really thinks.

Gloucester : My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much. Edmund, find Edgar ad make him talk to you. I want to know the truth.

Edmund : I will go and find him immediately.

Gloucester : Find him, Edmund, and be careful.
(to himself) What is happening? I cannot believe that Kent has been sent away! He is an honest man. It is all too strange.(Gloucester exits, Edgar enters)

Edmund : Ah, Edgar. There you are. How are you? When did you last see our father?

Edgar : I am well, Edmund. I saw our father last night.

Edmund : And did you talk to him?

Edgar : Yes, we spent two hours together.

Edmund : Did you say anything unkind to him? He is very angry with you at the moment. Please, don't go near him until he is less angry.

Edgar : Really? Then somebody has lied about him.

Edmund : That is what I am worried about. Stay with me for now. I will take you to see our father when he feels better. Here is my key. Oh, and if you go out, take your sword.

Edgar : My sword? But why?

Edmund : That is the best advice I can give you. Please, go quickly.
(Edgar exits)

Edmund : My brother and father trust me, which makes them easy to deceive. I need these two fools to make my plan work. If I can't get some land in the correct way, I will have to be clever to get it. (Edmund exits)

Exercises based on the story

a) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) It is generally known that women.......................about their age.
   a) lie b) talk c) deceive d) trust
2) My son is hardworking, so he..................... to win a prize.
   a) reserves b) deserves c) receives d) supports
3) He played tricks on me, this means he ....me.
   a) refused b) ignored c) blamed d) deceived
4) Our marriage is based on love and...................... .
   a) falsehood b) lies c) trust d) deceit
5) You should pay tax for what you inherit. This is called an .... tax.
   a) inhabit b) inhabitant c) inhibition d) inheritance
6) During the war, some leaders were...............away for political reasons.
   a) thrown b) sent c) kept d) put
7) My friend's.........................forced me not to deceive him.
   a) dishonesty b) loyalty c) causality d) immunity
8) To hide himself, he ....through the back door.
   a) exited b) existed c) expected d) exiled
9) He was killed with a......................... .
   a) word b) sword c) switch d) swing
10) My grandmother had a small..................as a cleaner, but she never had very much money.
   a) anger b) amount c) number d) income
11) It is natural to feel.......................sometimes, but it is important to learn to control it.
   a) loyalty b) trust c) angry d) hungry
12) My younger brother never lies. He always tells the.......................
   a) story b) difference c) time d) truth
13) We really wanted to climb the mountain, and we all felt very happy when we ....
   a) descended b) succeeded c) failed d) fell

14) On leaving my younger sons, my heart was................... .
a) destroyed b) damaged c) beating d) broken

15) Younger sons and daughters should take .... of their old parents .
a) care b) careful c) careless d) carefully

16) He was drinking and making a .... of himself.
a) fool b) foolish c) fooling d) folk

17) Show mercy to other people, don't be .... to them.
a) kind b) polite c) cruel d) good

18) It is known that .... are more important than words.
a) phrases b) sentences c) actions d) fiction

19) You are a great man. You .... to be honoured.
a) reserve b) deserve c) serve d) receive

20) My uncle rarely smiles and laughs. He is always firm and ....
a) lazy b) funny c) joyful d) serious

b) Write a story of about (180) words on the following:

" Money could be a source of misery "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

[Part IV] General Exercises



A) Highly distinguished تمارين للفائقين

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1) The .... you study, the better marks you get .
   a) less   b) more   c) most   d) best
2) Of all the shirts in the shop, he bought the .... one.
   a) cheap   b) cheaper   c) cheaply   d) cheapest
3) .... my point of view, it is important to respect our elders.
   a) In   b) From   c) By   d) With
4) He gave me the .... expensive present of all.
   a) least   b) less   c) more   d) much
5) This cake is.................... tasty than the one we ate last week.
   a) least   b) less   c) most   d) much
6) Can you ....any particular types of food which is very popular?
   a) cook   b) eat   c) define   d) name
7) Don't teach too many things.................... to avoid confusion.
   a) time   b) sometimes   c) on time   d) at a time
8) I had to write.................................. .
   a) a five- page article   b) a five-pages article
   c) an article of five page   d) a five- page articles
9) I don't like the soup, it was too......................... .
   a) sandy   b) windy   c) salty   d) dusty
10) It is ....in Britain to eat turkey at Christmas.
   a) obligatory   b) possible   c) traditional   d) probable

B) Comprehension

2. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Ecotourism is travelling to protected areas where human rights are respected. Ecotourism is important as we want the future generations to enjoy the same wonderful environment we have

today. Individuals who are ecological and socially conscious have a role to play in that respect. They greatly appreciate the natural beauty of nature.

Governments are trying to help local communities and local people to keep their heritage. Ecotourism also calls for promotion of recycling and energy and water conservation. Ecotourism is facing a great conflict between making money and keeping away from the negative impact of tourism. The more pressure on local environment is put, the more necessary the development of infrastructure is needed. Places where wildlife viewing is involved, animals can be scared away.

a) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "impact" means ....
   a) influence **b) fluent** **c) affect** **d) efficiency**
2. Recycling means ....
   a) cycling **b) remaking** **c) cycle** **d) circling**
3. Ecotourism is meant to have wonderful and clean ....
   a) ecology **b) environment** **c) system** **d) space**
4. The opposite of infrastructure is ....
   a) superstructure **b) superhuman**
   c) construction **d) destruction**
5. Which word is synonymous with " **stress** " ?
   a) development **b) pressure** **c) ecotourism** **d) generation**
6. The ecological role of individuals is to .... the natural beauty of nature.
   a) ruin **b) appreciate** **c) depreciate** **d) damage**
7. Make money and play a role are types of ....
   a) opposites **b) antonyms** **c) synonyms** **d) collocations**
8. The science which deals with environment is called ....
   a) phonology **b) oncology** **c) ecology** **d) pathology**

3) Translation

a) Translate into Arabic :

1. The government does its best to increase the production of cultivated land by increasing the fertility of soil or by combating pests and plant diseases.

....

....

2. Both the government and individuals are responsible for protecting the national heritage which shows the greatness of our civilisation.

....

....

b) Translate into English :

١. توجد هناك دعوات كثيره من الخبراء في جميع أنحاء العالم بضرورة الحفاظ على البيئة وتعقد المؤتمرات الآن برعاية الأمم المتحدة لتحقيق هذا الهدف.

....

....

٢. يجب علينا ترشيد الاستهلاك فى المياه والكهرباء والطعام وذلك لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد فى الأسعار آلتي ترتفع بشده من وقت لأخر .

....

....

d) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

" A famous festival in your country "

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

How to keep the environment : كيف تحافظ على البيئة

As a matter of fact, man has realized the importance of keeping the local and world environment clean and protecting it from all kinds of pollution. That is a clean environment means a healthy life for all human beings all over the world

It has been noticed that pollution has increased since the beginning of the industrial revolution. Man began to build factories, drive cars, fly planes and these inventions have become major sources of pollution. There are now calls, all over the world to urge all countries to unite together to find a solution to this thorny problem. Lots of conferences have been held under the umbrella of the United Nations to discuss it.

Scientists have been doing researches to find ways to reduce pollution and save the planet.

There are some suggested solutions that should be taken into consideration. Governments everywhere shouldn't be using harmful chemicals which damage the environment. Also, more plants should be planted to make the air pure and fresh. People must stop dumping rubbish into rivers to ensure that fresh water is clean and safe for human use.

Ships should not throw waste and oil into the sea to protect the sea life.

Finally, one can say that it is a must for all the world countries to co-operate together to avoid making our earth a deadly planet. Strict laws should be issued to punish those who cause any kind of pollution. Scientists should do their best to help people avoid the ill effects of pollution.

(Part V)



Exercises from the Students' books & the workbooks

تمارين من كتاب الطالب و كتاب الأعمال التحريرية

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1) You should eat an equal........................of proteins and carbohydrates.

a) number b) amount c) sum d) size

2) How do you...............................famous festivals in your country?

a) collaborate b) create c) celebrate d) coordinate

3) Eating.........................is healthier than eating indoors.

a) outdoor b) out c) in d) inside

4) What about getting......................on Friday? It is off.

a) up b) together c) out d) away

5) On one ...., his father threw a stone at him.

a) event b) incident c) occasion d) episode

6) When you ....food, you get it ready to be eaten.

a) prepare b) prescribe c) propose d) present

7) Our waiter is very helpful. He.................us quickly.

a) deserved b) served c) service d) serving

8) It is time to uproot or eradicate يستأصل ....teaching methods.

a) modern b) recent c) up-to-date d) traditional

9) Vegetable curry is............................popular meal on the menu.

a) more b) much c) most d) the most

10) Many people think that nut biscuits are .... ones on the menu.

a) best b) the best c) better d) worse

11) Vegetable curry is ....than all the other meals at the restaurant.

a) **expensive** b) **small** c) **cheaper** d) **popular**

12) Nut biscuits are ....than the other ones on the menu.

a) **sweet** b) **salty** c) **sweeter** d) **sweetest**

13) Ahmad did not buy his house . It was an ....from his parents.

a) **inherit** b) **inherited** c) **inhibition** d) **inheritance**

14) The man in the market says that all his watches are new, but I don't ....him. They are all quite old.

a) **blame** b) **praise** c) **trust** d) **crust**

15) Do you think that ....is the most important quality that a best friend can show you?

a) **deceit** b) **falsehood** c) **disobedience** d) **loyalty**

16) This email asking for money says it is from the bank, but I think it is trying to............................us.

a) **receive** b) **delay** c) **delete** d) **deceive**

17) You can go into the building one way and ....through a different door.

a) **exit** b) **exile** c) **exist** d) **persist**

Test based on unit (2)

A) Vocabulary & Structures

A) Choose the TWO correct answers of the Five options given:

1) ....food is strongly flavoured with spices .
   a) Salty b) Sweet c) Spicy
   d) Spacious e) Seasoned

2) Have you ....good breakfast for us? Not yet.
   a) done b) prepared c) cooked
   d) fried e) made

3) Our glorious victory in 1973 was undoubtedly an unforgettable ....
   a) event b) eventual c) eventually
   d) incident e) occurrence

4) He spooned the ice cream into a cup and.........................it to her.
   a) drank b) ate c) suckled
   d) led e) fed

B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5) Food nowadays is not as ....as food in the past.
   a) healthy b) healthier c) healthily d) wealthy

6) Who is looking ....your children during your absence?
   a) at b) for c) after d) forward

7) This film is ....interesting of all the films we have seen.
   a) less b) least c) more d) the least

8) I have......................... .
   a) two-wheel bicycle b) a two- wheel bicycle
   c) a bicycle of two wheel d) a two- wheel bicycles.

9) He is growing fatter and......................everyday.
   a) fat b) more fat c) most fat d) fatter

10) She is ....intelligent as her sister.
   a) as b) much c) like d) such

11) When are we going to get ....to discuss some issues?
   a) up b) through c) back d) together

12) Of all people, he gets up ....

a) early b) earlier c) earliest d) the earliest

13) Our football team have been.................. their victory all day.

a) cooperating b) coordinating c) ceased d) celebrating

14)The more you work, the .... you become.

a) rich b) richer c) richest d) most rich

15) It seems.................. today than it was yesterday.

a) hot b) most hot c) hotter d) hottest

16) You must.................. other people's wishes or rights.

a) detect b) elect c) select d) respect

B Reading Comprehension

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Today you can find a fast food restaurant in almost every city. Why do people prefer fast food restaurants? Two things make fast food restaurants popular: speed and price. People don't want to waste a lot of time eating or preparing food. The service is fast, so they can order what they want, eat it and be finished in less than 15 minutes. And prices are cheap. Because of the large number of meals sold every day, costs are kept low. Another thing people like is that they can be sure how the food will taste in a fast food restaurant. The great fast food companies always make sure that <u>their</u> food sold everywhere will taste exactly the same at any place. Some say that fast meals have no value. But one thing is certain; most people everywhere like food and finds it a comfortable and cheap way to eat.

a) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. People can order what they want because of......................

a) the large number of meals b) the fast service

c) the high costs d) foods with no value

2. Fast food companies make sure foods sold everywhere.......................

a) have the same taste b) have the high price

c) differ from place to place d) are valueless

3) If something has no value, it is ....

a) valuable b) worthwhile c) valueless d) priceless

4) Fast food restaurants are distinguished by ....

a) speed not price b) neither speed nor price
c) speed or price d) both speed and price

5) According to the passage, people .... fast food restaurants

a) hate b) dislike c) prefer d) refuse

6) Fast food restaurants are desired by the majority because of .... prices.

a) expensive b) cheap c) high d) soaring

7) The antonym of " taste " is ....

a) smell b) swallow c) distaste d) eat

8) We can understand from the passage that fast food restaurants are ....

a) time-saving b) time-wasting
c) time-consuming d) both b and c

C Writing

3. a) Translate into Arabic:

Global warming will cause ice in some regions to melt, sea levels will rise , there will be floods and lots of people will be homeless.

....

....

b) Translate into English:

بلادنا غنية بموارد طبيعية التي إذا احسن استغلالها سيؤدى ذلك إلى الرفاهية والتقدم الملحوظ مما سيؤدي لتحسين دخول الأفراد.

....

....

4) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic;

" Rules followed while eating "

....

....

....

Helpful Words

ecotourism	سياحة في بيئة نظيفة	waste	يهدر / مخلفات
costs	تكاليف	speed	سرعة
fast food	الوجبات السريعة	companies	شركات
regions	مناطق	valueless	ذو قيمة
welfare	رفاهية	worthwhile	ذو قيمة / شان
floods	فيضانات	homeless	بلا مأوي
rubbish / garbage	زبالة / قمامة	global warning	الاحتباس الحراري
distinctive	مميز	a collection of poems	ديوان شعر
urgent	عاجل	inventiveness	الابتكارية

Extra Words كلمات إضافية

recipe	وصفة	courgette	كوسه
beef	لحم البقر	mussels	بلح البحر
veal	لحم العجل	leek	كرات
lamb	لحم ضان	auborigine	باذجان
chicken	فراخ	cabbage	كرنب
pasta	مكرونة	pear	كمثري
oysters	محارات	peach	خوخ
shrimps	جمبري	cauliflower	قرنبيط
crabs	سرطان البحر	pea	بسلة

Unit 

The future of food مستقبل الطعام

SB : 26- 35

WB pages : 100 – 105

THE Future OF Food

Objectives

Reading : Two articles about future sources of food and more sustainable farming.

Writing : Essay with proposals for to feed people more sustainably in the future.

Listening : An interview with an expert on sustainable farming .

Speaking : Speculating about the future.

Language : will / be going to / Future continuous.

Life skills : problem solving

The future of food مستقبل الطعام

A) Reading



A) Highlighted words

agriculture	farming and the methods used to look after crops and animals.	الزراعة(الأساليب المستخدمة للاعتناء بالمحاصيل والحيوانات)
crop	a plant such as grain, fruit ....etc grown in large amounts	محصول (نبات مثل الحبوب، فاكهة ....إلخ يزرع بمساحات كبيرة)
earth	the planet third in order of distance from the sun.	الأرض (الكوكب الثالث في ترتيب المسافة من الشمس)
innovation	a new idea or method.	ابتكار / تجديد
livestock	animals and birds kept on a farm.	ماشية / مواشي
production	the process of making or growing goods to be sold.	إنتاج
source	the place something comes from.	مصدر
sustainable	causing little damage to the environment and can continue for so long.	محافظ (صديق) على البيئة
variety	the characteristic of changing and being different.	تنوع / تعدد

New Vocabulary

phrase (n.)	عبارة	save (v.)	يوفر / يدخر / ينقذ
solution (n.)	حل	algae (n.)	طحلب (نبات بحري)
article (n.)	مقالة	notice (v.)	يلاحظ
farm (n.)	مزرعة	fashion (n.)	موضة
wet (adj.)	مبلل	tasty (adj.)	لذيذ الطعم
scientist (n.)	عالم	continent (n.)	قارة
create (v.)	يخلق / يبدع	essay (n.)	مقال
chemicals (n.)	مواد كيميائية	explain (v.)	يشرح
electric (adj.)	كهربائي	finally (adv.)	أخيرا
vehicle (n.)	مركبة	evidence (n.)	دليل

according to (prep.)	طبقا لـ	efficiently (adv.)	بكفاءة
result (n.)	نتيجة	suggest (v.)	يقترح
increase (v.)	يزداد	surface (n.)	سطح / وجه
space (n.)	مساحة / فضاء	clearly (adv.)	بوضوح
vehicles (n.)	مركبات	conclusion (n.)	خاتمة
burger (n.)	برجر	example (n.)	مثال
difference (n.)	فرق / اختلاف	factual (adj.)	حقيقي / فعلي
between (prep)	بين	sheep (n.)	الماشية
goats (n.)	الماعز	involve (v.)	يتضمن / يشتمل على
percent (adv.)	في المائة	equipment (n.)	معدات
laboratory (n.)	معمل	company (n.)	شركة
instead (adv.)	بدلا من ذلك	seawater (n.)	ماء البحر
billion (n.)	بليون	huge (adj.)	ضخم / هائل
researcher (n.)	باحث	population	سكان
seriously (adv)	بجدية	furniture (n.)	أثاث
cause (v.)	يسبب	central (adj.)	منتصف
southern (adj.)	جنوبي	local (adj.)	محلي
tourism (n.)	سياحة	elsewhere (adv.)	في مكان ما آخر
expect (v.)	يتوقع	encourage (v.)	يشجع
charity (n.)	مؤسسة خيرية	due to (adj.)	يرجع إلى / بسبب
remove (v.)	يزيل	chemicals (n.)	مواد كيميائية
soil (n.)	تربة زراعية	extraordinary (adj.)	رائع / استثنائي
warm (adj.)	دافيء	station (n.)	محطة
effect (n.)	تأثير	electric (adj.)	كهربائي
climate (n.)	مناخ	petrol (n.)	بنزين السيارة
energy (n.)	طاقة	hydroponics (n.)	علم الزراعة في الماء
produce (v.)	ينتج	traditional (adj.)	تقليدي
face (v.)	يواجه	surprisingly (adv.)	بشكل مدهش

almost (adv.)	تقريبا	brainstorm(n.)	العصف الذهني
rainforest (n.)	غابة مطيرة	insect (n.)	حشرة
destroy (v.)	يدمر	contain (v.)	يحتوي على
island (n.)	جزيرة	predict (v.)	يتنبأ
imagine (v.)	يتخيل	specific (adj.)	محدد
sea weed (n.)	عشب بحري	mainly (adv.)	أساسا
whale (n.)	الحوت	case (n.)	حالة
robot (n.)	إنسان آلي	urban (adj.)	حضري
delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	fresh (adj.)	طازج
popular (adj.)	شعبي / محبوب	restaurant (n.)	مطعم
market (n.)	سوق	decade (n.)	عقد (١٠ سنوات)
negative (adj.)	سلبي	roof (n.)	سطح
argument (n.)	جدال	The Antarctic (n.)	المنطقةالقطبية
original (adj.)	أصلي	factory (n.)	مصنع
gap (n.)	فجوة / فراغ	include (v.)	يشتمل على

B) Synonyms المرادفات

Word		Synonyms
innovation	ابتكار / تجديد	alteration / revolution / variation / modernism / newness
livestock	ماشيه / مواشي	animal / beast / creature
production	إنتاج	manufacturing / making fabrication
variety	تنوع / تعدد	diversity / difference / change
article	مقالة	essay / report / account / story
wet	مبلل	damp / moistened
create	يخلق / يبدع	design / make / produce / fabricate /
vehicle	مركبة	machine / wheels / auto
result	نتيجة	consequence / outcome / effect / reaction / conclusion

increase	يزداد	enlarge / expand / grow / multiply
difference	اختلاف	contrast / variation / gap / dissimilarity
save	يوفر / ينقذ	rescue / preserve / conserve / protect
protect	يحمي	defend / guard / secure / fortify / shield
explain	يشرح / يفسر	clarify / explicate / demonstrate / clear
evidence	دليل	proof / confirmation / verification
clearly	بوضوح	plainly / distinctly / obviously
factual	حقيقي / فعلي	true / accurate / real / correct / exact / precise
conclusion	خاتمة / نهاية	end / closure / finish / termination
remove	يزيل	separate / extract / take away / detach
soil	تربة زراعية	earth / ground / clay / dust
researcher	باحث	analyst / scientist / tester / experimenter
energy	طاقة	life / fire / strength / power
local	محلي	neighbourhood / regional / domestic /home
contain	يحتوي على	hold / carry / involve / control
almost	تقريباً / حوالي	nearly / more or less / roughly
destroy	يدمر	demolish / pull down / ruin / smash / blow up / explode / damage
negative	سلبي	pessimistic / obstructive / unresponsive / harmful / damaging / unfavourable

c) Antonyms

result	نتيجة	cause	سبب
dry	جاف	wet	مبتل
increase	يزداد	decrease	يقل
positive	إيجابي	negative	سلبي
understand	يفهم	misunderstand	يسيء الفهم
destroy	يدمر	protect	يحمي
include	يتضمن	exclude	يستبعد

fill	يملأ	empty	يفرغ
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
giant	عملاق / ضخم	small	صغير
sustainable	محافظ على البيئة	unsustainable	مدمر للبيئة
clear	واضح	vague	غامض
introduction	مقدمة	conclusion	خاتمة
efficiently	بكفاءة	inefficiently	بدون كفاءة
local	محلي	foreign	أجنبي
encourage	يشجع	discourage	يثني عن فعل
ordinary	عادي	extraordinary	استثنائي
modern	حديث	traditional	تقليدي
solve	يحل	complicate	يعقد
urban	حضري	rural	ريفي

D) Prepositions

dry for	جاف لـ..	feel about	يشعر بشأن
effect on	تأثير على	live on	يعيش على
deal with	يتناول	reason for	مبرر لـ
find out	يكتشف	work on	يعمل في
special about	خاص بشأن	opinion about	رأي في
argue for	يجادل لصالح	argue against	يجادل ضد
fill in	يملئ	kind (type) of	نوع من
focus on	يركز على	available for	متوفر لأجل
heat up	يرفع الحرارة	look for	يبحث عن
instead of	بدلا من	cut down	يقطع / يجتث
work for	يعمل لدى	based on	قائم على
solution to	حل لـ	good for	مفيد لـ ..

E) Idiomatic Expressions

▪ A variety in the sources of	تنوع في مصادر .....
▪ create a variety of	يخلق تنوعا في .....
▪ the United Nations	الأمم المتحدة
▪ as a result	كنتيجة لـ ....
▪ have space for	لديه مساحة لأجل
▪ have a negative effect on	له تأثير سلبي على
▪ In Southern Africa	في جنوبي إفريقيا
▪ technological solutions to	حلول تقنية لـ ....
▪ find new ways to	يجد طرقا جديدة لأجل ....
▪ tell the difference between......and.....	يذكر الفرق بين .....و......
▪ by the end of	بنهاية ....
▪ the most popular sport	الرياضة الأكثر شعبية
▪ getting more popular around the world	تصبح أكثر شعبية حول العالم
▪ make sense	له معنى
▪ the only source of........................	المصدر الوحيد لـ ......
▪ give an opinion on	يعطي رأيا في ....
▪ over the next few decades	على مدى العقود القليلة المقبلة
▪ make seawater safe to	يجعل مياه البحر آمنة لـ ....
▪ make furniture	يصنع الأثاث
▪ started a long time ago	بدأت من فترة طويلة مضت
▪ make more money from	يكون مزيدا من المال من ....
▪ at the end of	في نهاية ....
▪ find enough land for	يجد مزيدا من الأراضي لـ ....
▪ control the flow of	يتحكم في تدفق ....

F) Word Families

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
include تضمن	Inclusion تضمين / ادراج	inclusive متضمن / شامل	inclusively بشكل شامل
decide يقرر	decision قرار	decisive حازم	decisively بشكل صارم
succeed ينجح	success نجاح	successful ناجح	successfully بنجاح
argue يجادل	argument جدال	arguable قابل للجدل	arguably بشكل جدلي
solve يحل	solution حل	solvable قابل للحل	------------------
differ يختلف	difference اختلاف	different مختلف	differently بشكل مختلف
base يؤسس	base أساس	basic أساسي	basically أساسيا
vary يختلف	variety تنوع	various متنوع/متعدد	------------------
power يزود بالطاقة	power قوة / طاقة	powerful قوي	powerfully بشكل قوي / بقوة
produce ينتج	produce منتج زراعي product منتج	production الانتاج productivity انتاجية	------------------

G) Language Notes

soil (n.) : the upper layer of earth in which plants grow

تربة زراعية (الطبقة العليا التي تستخدم في الزراعة)

land (n.) : an area of ground أرض يابسة (ليس عليها ماء)

- Crops grow well in rich soil.
- Sailors become happy when they reach land.

tasty (adj.) : delicious. لذيذ الطعم

tasteful (adj.) : (appropriate / in good taste). حسن الذوق(الملابس / الألوان)

- Food cooked by my mother is very tasty.
- Your choice of colours is tasteful.

product (n.) : manufacturing from raw materials. منتج (من مواد خام)

produce (n.) : agricultural products such as vegetables, fruits ...... etc منتجات (زراعية / حيوانية)

- Electronics is the most important product of Japan.
- Cotton is an important produce of Egypt.

affect (v.) : cause something to change. يؤثر على

effect on (n.) : the result of something. تأثير على

- Technology affects our life to a great extent.
- Pollution has a bad effect on the environment.

weather (n.) : the atmosphere state at a certain place and time. الطقس (حالة الجو في مكان ووقت محدد)

climate (n) : the weather conditions in an area over a long period. مناخ (أحوال جوية لفترات طويلة مثل الفصول)

- I think tomorrow's weather will be fine.
- Such trees grow in hot climate.

research (n.) : a serious study. بحث / دراسة علمية

search (n.) : an attempt to find someone or something. بحث (للعثور على شخص / شيء)

- They're doing some research into Coronavirus.
- It took us hours to help in the search for the missing girl.

most of : the greater number or amount of. معظم

the most : the greater in amount or degree. الأكثر .... (يليها صفة)

- I spend most of the break in the school library.
- This is the most difficult part of the lesson.

expect (v.) : believe that it will happen. يتوقع (حدوث شيء ذهنيا)

wait for (v.): stay until (sb / sth) arrives. ينتظر لـ (شخص / شيء)

- I expect that our team will win.
- I'm waiting for my father.

open (v) : to move (sth) to a position that is not closed. يفتح
open (adj): not closed مفتوح

- Could you open the window, please ?
- I think the bank is still open.

raise (v) : move to a higher position. يرفع / يربي
rise (v.) : move from a lower position to a higher one. ترتفع / ينهض / تشرق

- She raised both arms above her head.
- What time does the moon rise ?

too many + اسم جمع يعد يوجد عدد أكبر من اللازم من
too much + اسم مفرد لا يعد توجد كمية أكبر من اللازم من

- There're too many desks in the class.
- There is too much water in the street.

enough + n. : كافي
adj. + enough : لدرجة أن

- There are enough seats for all of you.
- Heba is clever enough to pass her exams.

's : تستخدم للإضافة مع الاسم المفرد أو الاسم الجمع الذي لا ينتهي بـ s
s' : تستخدم مع الاسم الجمع الذي ينتهي بـ (s)

- I did the homework in an hour's time.
- This is the children's room.
- This is the boys' class.

The Reading Text (1) SB Page (26) Lesson 1

According to the United Nations, there will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050. As a result, we will have to increase our food production by about 70 percent. However, farmers do not have space to keep more livestock and grow more crops. Instead, they'll need to look for more sustainable solutions and this will involve producing a wider variety of food.

How would you feel about eating a burger that was grown in laboratory? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock. Some of the people who have eaten these burgers say that they can't tell the difference between the new burgers and real meat.

Researchers from the United Nations have found that some kinds of agriculture are seriously damaging the land. This is not sustainable. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food production. In Europe, most of damage is due to farmers using too many chemicals, so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow. In southern Africa, the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can expect that farmers in southern Africa will be using innovations in technology to remove water from the land and use it elsewhere.

The Reading Text (2) SB Page (30) Lesson 4

Is algae the future of food ?

We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and dry to agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea?

Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of algae are called seaweed, and this is a very popular food in China and Japan.

Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future. They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment, because they will be growing our food in the ocean. In fact, scientists think that growing

algae will help to clean the sea and improve the air that we breathe. But will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even notice, Scientists are already using seaweed to replace salt in bread and some other foods make it much healthier.

Listening The future of food

Listening An interview with an expert on sustainable farming

[Set in video script box] Video script

Would you like to do more to help the environment by living a more sustainable life? It's actually easier than you might think. There are many small changes you can make that will help to protect the Earth. Here are three of them.

Let's start with food. You don't have to become a vegetarian, but eating less meat will help the environment. Livestock produce dangerous gases and they can damage the land they live on.

When you need to travel, think about whether you really need to go in the car or take the bus. It's often possible to walk or ride a bike instead and these are more sustainable ways of travelling. Everyone likes to get new things, but before you ask your parents to buy you new clothes or new games, ask yourself if you really need them. It isn't sustainable for people to continue buying so much stuff!

Listening and reading [Audio icon] 1.15

The population of Egypt is growing by nearly two percent a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This is a problem in a country where 95 percent of its population live on about four percent of its land. It is thought that the population of Egypt will be around 128 million by 2030. So what are the solutions to these problems? One plan is to invest billions of pounds in a new capital city outside Cairo. This is one of the big projects that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

Listening [Audio icon] 1.12

1 Listen to an interview with Dr Parker, an expert on the rainforests in Borneo. Tick (✓) the things that Dr Parker explains.

Interviewer : Hello everyone. In today's show I'll be talking to my guest, Dr Sarita Parker, who's an expert on the rainforests in Borneo. Welcome to the show, Dr Parker.

Dr Parker : It's great to be with you, John.

Interviewer : Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?

Dr Parker : A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different types of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.

Interviewer : And what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?

Dr Parker : Well, Borneo is a large island in South-East Asia, and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, recently the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than usual. And scientists think that there will be even less rainfall on the island in the next few years.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Dr Parker : Unfortunately, some farmers are cutting down trees and starting fires so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get even hotter, you see. So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest over the next few decades. That would be terrible for the animals and plant life in the rainforest, and Borneo would heat up even more.

Interviewer : Do you think those farmers will keep cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?

Dr Parker : Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to feed their families, however, we hope that in a

53) The operation .... putting a small tube into the girl's heart.

a) consists b) considers c) contains d) involves

54) This washing powder will .... even old stains.

a) move b) increase c) remove d) double

55) The .... is a very large sea mammal.

a) caw b) whale c) buffalo d) lion

56) Some surgeries can be carried out by ....

a) engines b) machines c) tools d) robots

57) There is a wide .... between the rich and the poor.

a) gap b) gate c) bridge d) road

58) .... tests suggest that the new drug may be used to treat Coronavirus.

a) Computer b) Laboratory c) Personal d) Public

59) A decision was finally made after some ....

a) stories b) tales c) argument d) games

60) Tropical rainforests used to cover 10% of the earth's ....

a) mountains b) oceans c) lakes d) surface

Writing

a) Translate into Arabic :

1. Manufacturers have always told us that their products are of good quality. Their ultimate goal is to make big profits.

....

....

2. Education is becoming more and more important. People have to continue learning new skills throughout their lives.

....

....

....

3. Great efforts have been made towards equality between men and women . Women are offered the same jobs and get equal pay for equal work .

....

....

Nowadays, everything grown with chemical fertilizers may cause dangers to the consumers of fruits and vegetables and other things grown.

....

....

....

b) Translate into English :

١) يجب أن نتأكد أن الطعام الذى نتناوله آمن وصحي و طازج لكي نتحاشي الإصابة بالأمراض خاصة المرتبطه بالمعده .

....

....

....

٢) يصاب الكثير من الناس بالأمراض بسبب شربهم ماء ملوث ملئ بالمخلفات السامه التي تنتج عن عمليات التصنيع.

....

....

....

٣) إن بناء النوادي الرياضية يساعد الشباب علي ممارسة الرياضة ويحميهم من الانحراف و تبني الأفكار السلبية.

....

....

....

٤) إن زيادة الإنتاج واجب وطني لمواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان والبطالة في مصر وتحسين مستوى المعيشه للمواطن المصري.

....

....

2) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:

" Cutting down rainforests "

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Part (II) Focus on Language

a) Use : (will + inf.) for :	تستخدم (will + inf) في الحالات الآتية:
1) Future true facts حقائق مستقبلية صادقة لا يمكن التحكم فيها	This school will be 50 years old next year.
2) Predictions تنبؤات (بدون دليل)	I think it will be hot today.
3) Quick decisions قرارات سريعة	The phone's ringing , I'll answer it.
4) Offers العروض	I'll see who it is at the door.
5) Requesting الطلب	Will you carry the bag for me؟
6) Promise الوعد	I'll visit you next month.
7) Condition جمل الشرط	If you play well , you'll win .
8) A threat تهديد	I'll fire you if you don't concentrate on your work.
9) Warning التحذير	Be careful or you'll hurt yourself.

تأتي (مصدر + will / won't) أيضا بعد تعبيرات معينة تدل علي
أبداء الرأي/ التنبؤ / التوقعات / الشكوك / المخاوف من المستقبل / للتحذير :

I think / I believe / I hope / I expect /I'm afraid / I 'm sure
+ will / won't +inf

ومع ظروف معينة مثل : **{ probably / possibly / certainly / perhaps }**
I promise / I predict / I suppose

- I'm sure , you'll pass the exam .
- Be careful or you'll get burnt.

لاحظ الآتي:

Be careful / look at / watch out + or = will + inf. - تهديد
Be careful ! / look out! / watch out ! + am/is/are going to تنبؤ بدليل

2) be going to + inf

تستخدم للتعبير عن خطط مسبقة و قرارات مخطط لها

a) I have planned to./ My plan is to. / I have made a prior plan (خطة مسبقة)

- I have planned to take a course in English. I am going to take a course.

b) I intend to.... / My intention is to...../ I have an intention to....

- I intend to spend the holiday in Alex. I'm going to spend it in Alex.

c) I've decided to.../ I've made a decision to.../ My decision is to...

- I've decided to build a villa .I'm going to build a villa.

لتكوين تنبؤات قائمة علي حقائق او دلائل في الوقت الحاضر .

- It's dark and cloudy. It's going to rain.

3) The Present continuous Tense المضارع المستمر

للإشارة إلي ترتيبات مستقبلية و خطط شخصية مكتملة محددة الزمن يمكن التحكم فيها وتغييرها.

- We are meeting at 9 o'clock on Monday morning.
- I've arranged to have a party next week. I'm having a party next week.

ترتيب للقيام بحدث في المستقبل و يكون بالجملة ما يدل علي ترتيب لأحداث مستقبلية

** أفعال شائعة الاستخدام مع المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل .

go / come / see / visit / meet / leave / have (a party)

- **I've arranged to..................**
- **..... - I've made arrangements to**

4) The Present Simple Tense المضارع البسيط

Used for programmes or timetables:

يستخدم للتعبير عن برامج أو جداول زمنية لا يمكن التحكم فيها ولا تغييرها مثل :

(الإنتاج / الإغلاق / العمل / القطارات / مواعيد الطائرات)

و يأتي غالبا مع أفعال معينة تعبر عن تلك المعاني مثل :

finish / arrive / leave / land / take off / open / start / close

- The bus leaves at nine o'clock.
- The museum opens at 10 a.m.

يُستخدم المضارع البسيط او المضارع التام بعد ادوات الربط الزمنية للدلالة علي المستقبل :-

الروابط الزمنية → مضارع بسيط , will + inf (مستقبل بسيط)
→ مضارع تام , will + inf (مستقبل بسيط)

- When she arrives (has arrived) , she will tell us all about the concert .

و لكن عندما نستخدم { When } كأداة استفهام يمكن أن يستخدم معها { will }

- When will he be back ?

2) Future continuous Tense المستقبل المستمر

A) Formation : will be + ing

الدلالة : يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سيكون مستمرا في وقت محدد في المستقبل.

- They'll be watching a film from 7 to 9 p.m.

B) Tense markers : التعبيرات الآتية تستخدم للإشارة للزمن

- It has been (arranged / planned / decided ....)
- This time (next week / next year / tomorrow ....)

أي إشارة زمنية على استمرار الحدث لفترة طويلة.

- (between now and next Friday) / by / in + مدة زمنية مستقبلية
- I can't visit you because I will /may be doing my homework this evening.

The government will be trying to reduce the effects of climate change.

• للحديث عن الأشياء التي تم ترتيبها أو التخطيط لحدوثها وهنا يعمل كالمضارع المستمر.

- We will be leaving for Dubai at 7 o'clock in the evening.

(We are leaving ......)

• لنشير إلى أننا سنكون في منتصف حدث ما في وقت محدد في المستقبل.

- The match begins at 7 : 30 and ends at 9: 15 So, at 8 : 30 , I'll be watching it.

4. Using " Will (you) be + - ing? "

استخدام صيغة (Will (you) be + - ing ?) للسؤال بأدب وبطريقة غير مباشرة عن خطط شخص ما في المستقبل القريب.

- "Will you be using your bicycle this evening ?
- "No, you can take it. "

Important Remarks ملاحظات هامة

Use (may be + ing) احداث مستقبلية أو اتجاهات محتملة لكنها ليست مؤكدة .

و لكن لاحظ الآتي :

- Many more people may be living in Cairo in the next 50 years.

• التنبؤ بحدث قصير في وقت محدد. (will + inf)

- In 2030, we will help people with diabetes.

• التنبؤ بحدث أطول على مدار فترة من الزمن. (will be + ing)

- Between 2020 and 2030 , we will be helping people with diabetes .

Exercises based on Grammar

A) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It .... I can see the dark clouds.
   a) will rain b) 's going to rain
   c) would rain d) is raining
2. {A} What would you like to eat? {B} I .... have a steak.
   a) 'd b) am going to c) 'll d) going to
3. In the year 2050, how old .... ?
   a) would you be b) will you be
   c) are you going to be d) are you
4. I .... Reda at the airport at 6 o'clock this evening.
   a) am meeting b) meet c) 'll meet d) have met
5. What time .... your plane take off ?
   a) does b) would c) will d) is
6. He is ahead of the other runners. He .... win the race.
   a) is going b) would c) is going to d) will
7. The workers .... the office from Friday to Wednesday.
   a) will have been decorated b) will be decorating
   c) will have decorated d) will decorated
8. The book is very long. I .... it all the coming week .
   a) will be reading b) will read
   c) will have been read d) will have read

9. In the future, most of our work .... by machines.
   a) will be doing b) has been done
   c) will be done d) will do
10. I'm tired. I think I .... working for some time.
   a) would stop b) will stop
   c) will be stopping d) will have stopped
11. What .... at 6 p.m. next Sunday?
   a) will you do b) will you be doing
   c) will you have done d) would you do
12. All this year long ,I .... PhD in business administration.
   a) will have done b) will be doing
   c) am doing d) will do
13. The Rock concert .... at 9.00.
   a) will start b) start c) starts d) is starting
14. I've just booked our summer holiday. We .... to Spain.
   a) will go b) will have gone c) are going d) go
15. I'm sure she .... be in her office for the rest of the afternoon.
   a) will b) would c) is going to d) is going
16. I must hurry because I .... to the doctor's.
   a) 'll go b) am going c) would go d) was going
17. We're having a party next Saturday. Who .... invite?
   a) will you b) are you going to
   c) do you d) would you
18. In the future, some cities .... under the ocean.
   a) will build b) will be built
   c) are going to build d) are building
19. Within hundred years, people .... on the moon.
   a) will be living b) are going to live
   c) are living d) would live
20. Give the money back or we .... call the police.
   a) were going to b) 'll c) are going to d) 'd

21. I'm convinced that inflation .... to 3% next year.
a) will fall b) is going to fall c) is falling d) falls
22. Look at that clear blue sky. It .... rain today.
a) isn't going to b) is going to c) would d) will
23. We .... a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?
a) are having b) have c) have had d) may have
24. There are a lot of people in the room. It......................difficult to find a chair.
a) will be b) will have been c) is d) is going to be
25. Look, there's a sandstorm. I .... the windows.
a) 'll be closing b) am going to close c) 'll close d) close
26. My plane .... at 10 o'clock.
a) is leaving b) is going to leave c) will leave d) leaves
27. I'm going to the airport in a minute. I .... to Paris later this morning.
a) will be flying b) will fly c) 'm flying d) fly
28. Perhaps we can meet when I'm back .... anything next Saturday?
a) Will you do
b) Have you done
c) Do you do
d) Are you doing
29. Next year, my grandfather .... 75 years old !
a) is going to be b) will have been c) will be d) is
30. I can't talk at the moment. I .... my homework.
a) am doing b) will have done c) do d) was doing
31. At one o'clock tomorrow, I .... lunch with my friends.
a) have eaten b) will be eating c) will eat d) eat
32. Those bags look heavy, so, I .... them for you.
a) will be carrying
b) am going to carry
c) will carry
d) am carry
33. I can't see you at ten o'clock tonight, I .... all my homework.
a) will be doing b) will have done c) do d) will do
34. My father .... me a present for my next birthday.
a) will have bought
b) is buying
c) will be buying
d) will buy

35. I think I .... the programme. Will you watch it with me?
a) 'm watching b) 'm going to watch
c) will watch d) watch

36. There's a good film on TV tonight. It .... at ten o'clock.
a) will be finishing b) will have finished
c) will finish d) finishes

37. The train to Cairo is on platform four and it .... in 30 minutes.
a) will leave b) is going to leave c) is leaving d) leaves

38. This autumn, my friend is walking a long way for charity. In October, he .... along the Nile.
a) has walked b) will be walking c) walks d) will walk

39. There's a book club meeting after school and everyone .... there.
a) is going to be b) will have been c) is d) will be

40. I predict that in the future mobile phones .... much smaller.
a) will be b) are going to be c) are d) will have been

b) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:

" The future of food "

....

....

....

....

....

Part (III) King Lear

Act I , Scene III & IV

New Vocabulary

hit (v.)	يضرب / يخبط	wait	ينتظر
behave	يتصرف	attendants	الحاضرين
angry about	غاضب بشأن	let	يسمح / يدع
foolish	أحمق	guilty	مذنب
still	لايزال	power	سلطة
immediately	في الحال	sure	متأكد
disguise	يتذكر	safe	أمن
continue	يستمر / يتواصل	shout	يصرخ
honest	أمين	solve	يحل
advice	نصيحة	disagree with	يختلف مع
rude	وقح	character	شخصية
notice	يلاحظ	angry with	غاضب مع
exit	يخرج / خروج	surprised	مندهش
call ... back	يعيد الاتصال بـ	follow	يتبع
unkind to	غير عطوف على	attack	يهجم على
worry about	يقلق بـ	a taste of his own medicine	يتذوق جزاء عمله السيء
wise	حكيم	noisy	ضوضاء
pull	يسحب / يجر	trouble	متاعب
cart	عربة تجرها الخيول	prepare	يعد / يجهز

King Lear Act I Scene III

{At the Duke of Albany's palace. Goneril enters with her servant Oswald}

GONERIL : Did my father, King Lear, hit my servant?

OSWALD : Yes, madam.

GONERIL : I must do something. His soldiers are starting to behave badly, and my father gets angry about everything, When he comes here, I won't speak to him. I'll tell him that I am ill.

OSWALD : He's coming, madam, I can hear him.

GONERIL : Tell the other servant not to do what he asks them. If he's unhappy, he can stay with my sister. The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!

OSWALD : Yes, madam.

GONERIL : I'll write to my sister immediately and tell her my plan. [She exits]

Act I Scene IV

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace . Kent enters in different clothes]

KENT : I've disguised how I usually speak, so I can help the man who told me to leave. I still love the king and I'll continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me.

[King Lear enters with soldiers and servants]

KING LEAR : Get my dinner ready. [A servant exits]
[To Kent] Who are you?

KENT : I am a poor but honest man.

KING LEAR : What do you want?

KENT : I want to help you, sir.

KING LEAR : Do you know me?

KENT : No, sir, but I want to help you because I can see that you are an important man.

KING LEAR : What can you do?

KENT : I can give good and honest advice.

KING LEAR : Then follow me. You can be my servant.

[Oswald enters]You, where's my daughter?

OSWALD : I'm sorry, sir...................[He exits]

KING LEAR : What did the man say? Call him back.

SOLDIER : He said that your daughter wasn't well.

KING LEAR : Why didn't he come back when I called him?

SOLDIER : Your Majesty, he was very rude. I don't know what the problem is, but the servant, the Duke and your daughter are all being very unkind to you.

KING LEAR : I've noticed that too. But where's my Fool? I haven't seen him for two days.

SOLDIER : He has been very unhappy since Cordelia went to France.

KING LEAR : Don't say her name to me! Go and tell Goneril that I want to speak to her.

[The soldier exits. Oswald and the fool enter.]

Oh, you, come here! Who am I?

OSWALD : My lady's father.

KING LEAR : My lady's father? How rude! [King Lear hits him]

OSWALD : Don't hit me, my lord

KENT : [Hitting him.] Don't be rude to the king or I'll hit you, too!

KING LEAR : Thank you. You are a good man.

[Goneril enters.]

KING LEAR : What's the matter, Goneril? Why are you holding your head?

Fool : You should worry, old King, because you gave everything away, rather than worrying about her head. One day, you will want everything back.

GONERIL : Father, are you encouraging your men to behave badly? Your Fool says and does what he wants.

FOOL : Even a fool knows when the cart is pulling the horse.

KING LEAR : Does anyone here know who I am? Tell me!

GONERIL : You're old and you should be wise. But you're keeping a hundred soldiers here, they are noisy and rude. Please don't have so many soldiers, and only keep the men who can behave well.

KING LEAR : [angry] What did you say? Call my soldiers, You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left.
[Albany enters and he is very surprised]
[To the soldiers.] Prepare my horses.

ALBANY : Please, sir, wait.

KING LEAR : [To himself.] Oh, why was I angry with Cordelia? She was not as rude to me as Goneril. Why. Why was I so foolish?

ALBANY : Your majesty, I don't know what's made you angry, but I'm not guilty.

KING LEAR : That might be true, but listen. If Goneril has a child one day, and the child is cruel to her, she will understand how I feel. Then she will have a taste of her own medicine.
[King Lear exits.]

ALBANY : What has happened, Goneril?

GONERIL : Nothing, Let him shout. He is a mad old man.
[King Lear enters again]

KING LEAR : Goneril, you have told fifty of my soldiers to go!

ALBANY : What is the matter, sir?

KING LEAR : I'll tell you. [To Goneril] I cannot believe that you have the power to make me so unhappy. But you have. I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!
[King Lear exits with Kent, and Attendants.]

GONERIL : Did you hear that, my husband?

ALBANY : You know how much I love you, Goneril, butt...

GONERIL : Don't say more. [To the Fool.] You, go. The Fool exits]

GONERIL : Is it a good idea to let him keep a hundred soldiers to help him in his old age? They might attack us.

ALBANY : I think you are worrying too much.

GONERIL : It's better to worry and be safe. I've written to my sister Regan and told her everything. I'm not angry with you because you asked me to be kinder to my father, but you are being foolish.

ALBANY : Maybe you know more than I do, GONERIL, but I think you are making problems rather than solving them.

[They exit.]

Exercises based on Act I Scene III & IV

a) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) The boy was dismissed from school when he .... badly.
   a) behaved **b) fell** **c) wrote** **d) played**
2) People prevented the man from .... a young child.
   a) helping **b) feeding** **c) hitting** **d) saving**
3) There are five .... in the prince's palace.
   a) masters **b) servants** **c) kings** **d) queens**
4) So many .... are standing all around the palace to protect it.
   a) dukes **b) ministers** **c) doctors** **d) soldiers**
5) It was .... of you to let this young boy drive the car.
   a) nice **b) foolish** **c) wise** **d) good**
6) The girl .... herself in different clothes so that no one would recognize her.
   a) disguised **b) put** **c) wore** **d) found**
7) The dog .... his owner whenever he went.
   a) attacked **b) cursed** **c) praised** **d) followed**
8) People everywhere like those who are ....
   a) rude **b) honest** **c) lazy** **d) ignorant**
9) When I got into the office, I .... that the manager had been absent.
   a) recognized **b) made** **c) noticed** **d) imagined**
10) Parents always .... their children to be polite.
   a) encourage **b) discourage** **c) warn** **d) prevent**

11) In the past, people used .... pulled by horses.
a) vehicles b) cars c) carts d) boats

12) He was ...., so he was sent to prison.
a) innocent b) guilty c) kind d) helpful

13) When the president finished his speech, all the...................... clapped.
a) viewers b) spectators c) attendants d) criminals

14) That dog .... a little girl and bit her last night.
a) attacked b) helped c) saved d) fed

15) Teachers are often angry .... naughty pupils.
a) about b) with c) for d) on

16) It was so .... that I couldn't sleep at night.
a) quiet b) calm c) noisy d) nice

17) It's the duty of the manager to .... all the problems.
a) complicate b) make c) increase d) solve

18) The coach .... me take part in the game.
a) allowed b) let c) told d) persuaded

19) Being a bad man, one day he will have a taste of his ....
a) medicine b) food c) drink d) juice

20) I can't wait any longer. Give me your decision ....
a) later b) after that c) immediately d) one day

b) Write a story of about (180) on the following topic:

" A man who was unkind to his father "

....

....

....

(Part IV) General Exercises



A) Highly distinguished تمارين للفائقين

Choose the correct words from a, b, c, or d:

1) The demand for unleaded .... has greatly increased all over the world.
   a) oil b) petroleum c) petrol d) gas
2) According to the law, you are innocent until proved you are....................
   a) brave b) honest c) generous d) guilty
3) This office offers a fast, friendly and .... service.
   a) efficient b) inefficient c) awful d) slow
4) We'll select the best from this year's ....of novels.
   a) harvest b) produce c) crop d) corn
5) The ploughed .... looked rich and dark and fertile.
   a) sand b) earth c) salt d) desert
6) Father is ....a beard.
   a) gluing b) making c) sticking d) growing
7) We should give the .... generations more encouragement.
   a) rising b) raising c) arising d) arousing
8) Terrorism creates a ....of fear.
   a) temperature b) weather c) climate d) warmth
9) The authority gave a ....response to our call for help, so we were angry.
   a) promising b) good c) positive d) negative
10) The government is doing its best to keep wages ....with inflation.
   a) level b) up c) side d) down

B) Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :-

Over 20 million people are employed in the coffee industry. They grow and sell coffee beans for 400.000.000 cups of coffee a year. Coffee is worth more money than any other industry in the world except oil. In Brazil alone, about 3.000.000 coffee plants are looked after every year.

Coffee was discovered in the country known today as Ethiopia, A man called Kaldi who was looking after his goats noticed that his goats were very energetic after eating a certain kind of berry. He decided to try the berries himself and found that they gave him a lot of energy. When some priests heard about this, they dried the berries then made them into a drink with water. Coffee was born!

It was in Turkey, however, that the coffee drink we know today was first made. Two Syrian businessmen brought the beans to Istanbul in 1555. The Turkish heated the beans over a fire, crushed them and then boiled them in water. Coffee drinking became an important part of Turkish life. In some ways Turkish coffee is similar to the espresso coffee drunk in Italy. It is dark and strong and drunk from small cups. However, it is made in a completely different way, and sometimes a spice called cardamom is added.

a) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Istanbul is the capital of ....
   a) Turkey b) Syria c) Ethiopia d) Italy
2. Tea is made from leaves but coffee is made from ....
   a) beans b) roots c) trunk d) bark
3. The Turkish coffee is .... to the Italian coffee.
   a) different b) similar c) tasty d) delicious
4. The man and his goats became very .... after eating berries.
   a) asleep b) unconscious c) dizzy d) energetic
5. If someone is energetic, he will be ....
   a) active b) lively c) lazy d) both a & b

6. Cardamom, which is added to the espresso coffee, is a kind of ....
   a) vegetable b) fruit c) spice d) dessert
7. Coffee industry occupies the .... place after oil industry.
   a) first b) second c) third d) fourth
8. Which word in the passage is synonymous with " grind " ?
   a) boil b) heat c) crush d) add

c) Translation:

a) Translate into Arabic:

1. Labels on products should include all information. They can help the customers to know exactly what they buy.

....

....

Pollution is one of the worst dangers that threaten our life on earth. We should eliminate it by all means.

....

....

b) Translate into English:

١. نهر النيل هو سر الحياة لمصر لقرون عديده ، لذا علينا أن نحميه من التلوث ونرشد استهلاكنا للمياه سواء للري أو الاستخدام المنزلي.

....

....

٢. من الضروري ان نحمي مياه النيل و المياه الجوفية من التلوث لكي نتجنب الأمراض آلتي يُسببها تلوث البيئة من حولنا.

....

....

....

الكلمات والتعبيرات الآتية يمكن أن تستخدم في كتابة المقال:

This essay will focus on	هذا المقال يركز على
After that, ...	بعد ذلك
In case of	في حالة
In my view,	في وجهة نظري
Due to	بسبب
Finally,	وأخيرا
To include,	في الخاتمة

A Model essay



" The future of farming "

This essay will focus on the future of agriculture :

First, I will explain the reason why agriculture needs to change. After that we will look at several ways that agriculture could change. Finally, I will give my opinion on what farmers should do to prepare for the future.

The Earth's surface is heading up and soon there will be less land that farmers can use In case of Africa, the continent could lose up to 18 percent of its from land in the next fifty years. As a result, farmers will need to farm their land even more efficiently.

Due to the fact that there will be less land available for agriculture in the future, farmers will need to grow a greater variety of crops. Evidence suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and we may start the production of new sources of food like algae, instead.

In my view, farmers should see this as a chance to try new things and a start using new technology, such as robots, on their farms. They should start doing this immediately so they're prepared for the future.

To conclude, agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades and farmers will need to change the way they farm, too.

(Part V)

Student's book and Workbook Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1) I think Hind .... a doctor in the future.
a) will have been b) is going to be c) will be d) is

2) In 100 years' time, I think handball .... the most popular sport.
a) is b) has been c) will be d) have been

3) In 20 years from now, people .... to school by bicycle.
a) will be travelling b) will travel
c) are going to travel d) travel

4) In 20 years' time, people .... mobile phone.
a) are still using b) will still be used
c) still use d) will still be using

5) In 100 years' time, people .... healthier food.
a) will eat b) will be eating c) are eating d) eat

6) I got a summer job working on a farm, I .... next month.
a) am going to start b) will start
c) start d) started

7) I think that our school .... more delicious meals next year.
a) serves b) is going to serve
c) will serve d) is serving

8) Work on the new sports field .... next Sunday.
a) will begin b) begins
c) will be beginning d) is going to begin

9) In four hours' time, I .... by the swimming pool.
a) will relax b) am going to relax
c) will be relaxing d) am relaxing

10) Who do you think .... the football match this afternoon ?
a) will win b) will be winning
c) wins d) is going to win

11) I can't imagine that we .... seaweed in Egypt in 20 years' time.
a) are going to eat b) will be eating
c) are eating d) will eat

12) Around 30% of Egyptians live in villages and work in farming and ....

a) industry
b) management
c) agriculture
d) tourism

13) It is not ....to use petrol in cars, as one day, we will have no oil.

a) reasonable b) profitable c) economical d) sustainable

14) My uncle keeps .... on his farm such as sheep and goats.

a) birds b) plants c) insects d) livestock

15) The weather has been very good for the cotton .... this year

a) clothes b) crop c) carpet d) shirt

16) Food ....went up after the company bought new equipment for its factory.

a) production b) irrigation c) seeds d) washing

17) Technological .... means that we can now make seawater safe to drink.

a) inspection b) infection c) invention d) innovation

18) The .... of crops grown on that farm is huge.

a) vary b) varies c) variety d) various

19) I can't visit my cousins in June because I .... for a charity.

a) will work
b) will be working
c) am going to work
d) am working

20) The train .... at the next station.

a) won't be stopping
b) isn't going to stop
c) isn't stopping
d) hasn't stopped

21) Do you think people .... holidays in space one day ?

a) will have
b) will be having
c) are having
d) are going to have

22) I think everyone .... electric cars in the future.

a) will be driving b) is going to drive c) will drive d) drives

23) In the future, there .... a problem finding enough land to grow things.

a) is going to be b) has been c) will be d) is

Test (3) based on Unit (3)

A) Vocabulary & Structures

A) Choose the TWO correct answers out of the Five options given:

1) I lost a bag .... a lot of important documents.
   a) containing b) including c) consisting
   d) constituting e) holding
2) Ring roads could offer the best .... to traffic jam in Cairo.
   a) lotion b) promotion c) answer
   d) solution e) motion
3) Farms keep .... for meat and milk production.
   a) cattle b) chicken c) dogs
   d) cats e) livestock
4) Pollution has .... effects on the environment.
   a) positive b) favourable c) wonderful
   d) negative e) harmful

B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5) I don't think the guests .... to the party before 8 o'clock.
   a) are going to come b) are coming
   c) come d) will come
6) This is my intention, I .... to another flat next month.
   a) am moving b) will move
   c) am going to move d) move
7) For ...., we need more water than on traditional farms.
   a) hydroponics b) electronics c) tectonics d) harmonics
8) In ten years' time, we .... most of the Egyptian deserts.
   a) will reclaim b) will be reclaiming
   c) are reclaiming d) are going to reclaim
9) People use chemicals to get rid of ....
   a) insects b) birds c) animals d) prisoners
10) Manar took my mobile phone instead .... hers by mistake.
   a) from b) for c) on d) of
11) One day, I .... a modern Luxurious car.
   a) will be buying b) am buying
   c) will buy d) am going to buy

12) I can't meet you at 6 o'clock, at this time I .... my physics lesson.

a) will have b) will be having
c) was having d) am going to have

13) Scientists work hard to find new sources of .... other than oil.

a) power b) energy c) strength d) force

14) It has been arranged. I .... my grandmother next Friday.

a) am visiting b) am going to visit c) will visit d) visit

15) I can't go on working, I .... to bed at once.

a) will be going b) am going to go c) will go d) would go

16) Water level in the river .... if there's heavy rain.

a) arises b) raises c) arouses d) rises

B. Reading Comprehension

3) Read the following passage, then answer the questions

In many parts of the world, people take naps in the middle of the day. This is especially the case in warmer climates where the heat makes wakes difficult in early afternoon. Researchers are now saying that naps are good for everyone in any climate. First of all, a daily nap means a more rested body and many mind health benefits. In countries where naps are traditional, people tend to suffer less from stress.

Many working people have no time to take naps. Their employers don't allow it. Remember that the best time to take a nap is about eight hours after you get up. A nap that lasts too long may also make it difficult for you to sleep at night.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1) In hot countries, work is difficult..........................

a) all day. b) in the evening
c) in the morning d) in the afternoon

2) When people take naps, they suffer less from ....

a) heart disease b) annoyance
c) stress d) diseases

3) Nap is useful for people ....
a) only physically b) only mentally
c) both physically and mentally d) neither physically nor mentally

4) Too long nap may cause sleep .... at night.
a) trouble b) pleasure c) dreams d) joy

5) Which verb in the passage is the same as " continue " ?
a) rest b) last c) sleep d) get up

6) The writer advises you to take .... naps in the midday.
a) long b) tall c) short d) lengthy

7) .... don't allow working people to take naps.
a) Employees b) Employers c) Masters d) both b & c

8) The word " benefits " in the passage is synonymous with ....
a) pros b) drawbacks c) obstacles d) hindrances

C. Writing

5) Translation:

a) Translate into Arabic:

If crops could be raised by hydroponics instead of farming, it would be a practical solution to the famine problem.

....

....

b) Translate into English:

يعد استخدام الأساليب الحديثة في الزراعة بدلا من الطرق التقليدية هو السبيل الوحيد لتحسين جودة المحاصيل.

....

....

6) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :-

" What should be done to improve traditional farming "

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Helpful Words

nap	غفوه	researcher	باحث
benefit	فائده	physically	جسديا
mentally	عقليا	pleasure	سرور
annoyance	مضايقه	practical	عملي
quality	نوعية / جودة	methods	أساليب

Extra Words كلمات إضافية

famine	مجاعة	lack of food	نقص الطعام
green house	صوبة زراعية	land reclamation	استصلاح
organic farming	الزراعة العضوية	desertification	التصحر
major problems	مشاكل رئيسية	rare plants	نباتات نادرة
the green belt	الحزام الأخضر	ecology	علم البيئة
limited resources	مصادر محدودة	vegetation	الخضرة
temperate climate	مناخ معتدل	sufficient food	طعام كافي
modern equipment	معدات حديثة	sea plants	نباتات بحرية
quality and quantity	كيفا وكما		

Review I based on Units 1 / 2 / 3

New Vocabulary

persuade (v.) يقنع	benefit (n.) فائدة
local (adj.) محلي	college (n.) كلية / معهد
teenager (n.) مراهق	recipe (n.) وصفة طعام
register (v.) يسجل	mention (v.) يذكر
far away (adj.) بعيدا	present (v.) يعرض / يقدم
example of (n.) مثال لـ	take place (v.) يحدث
register for the course يسجل لبرنامج دراسي	give you more energy تعطيك طاقة اكثر
on my own بنفسي	get better at يتحسن في
do a cooking course يعمل برنامج دراسي عن الطبخ	learn how to cook يتعلم كيف يطهي
only for teenagers فقط للمراهقين	find examples of يجد نماذج لـ ..
less likely to get ill أقل احتمالا أن يصاب بالمرض	make the immune system stronger يقوي جهاز المناعة
large amounts of................... كميات كبيرة من	have enough energy to لديه طاقة كافية لأجل
as much as possible كثيرا بقدر المستطاع	

Part 1 Reading

Kareem

I'm a runner who regularly runs very long distances. I need to eat large amounts of pasta, fruit, potatoes and other vegetables so I have enough to run for 30 or 40 kilometres each day. I also need to eat a lot of different foods that will make me stronger, such as meat, fish and eggs. I drink a lot of orange juice to boost my immune system, which

means that I'm less likely to get ill and have to stop training. I usually prepare my own food at home but when I want to eat out with my friends or family, I usually go to an Italian restaurant!

Amr

I'm a boxer, so I need to eat larger amounts of food than other athletes. When I started boxing, I started eating in a different way. Instead of three large meals a day, I usually eat six smaller meals, but I don't eat a wide variety of food. I usually eat eggs or white meat, like chicken, for almost every meal. Eating like this helps me to be stronger than the people I fight, which means I'm less likely to be injured. Before a big fight, I have to do a lot of training and I eat as much as possible, without eating unhealthy, fatty food, such as cakes and chocolate.

Hi Aya,

How are you today?

I think it's great that you're going to start cooking healthier food. I'm sure it will give you more energy and make you feel a lot better. I'd also like to learn how to cook meals that are healthier than the fast food that I usually eat. Do you want to do a cooking course with me so we can learn together? There's a new course that's going to start in two weeks' time at the local college. It's every Tuesday evening from 6 p.m to 8 p.m and it's only for teenagers!

You don't need to go to the college to register, you can do it on their website. Just search for the cooking course and it's the first course you'll see. I can do the course on my own if you can't make it, but it would be a lot more fun to learn with a friend. Talk to you soon!

Hadeer

Test (4) based on Units 1, 2 & 3

A) Choose the TWO correct answers out of the Five options given:

1) Drinking lemon and orange juice can help to .... the immune system.

a) damage b) boost c) blaze
d) weaken e) strengthen

2) This restaurant has a wide .... of dishes.

a) variety b) colours c) diversity
d) models e) sizes

3) We needn't import cotton; it's grown ....

a) regionally b) universally c) locally
d) secretly e) globally

4) I advise you to express your ideas .... to be understood.

a) rudely b) clearly c) loudly
d) obviously e) politely

B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5) I can't go with you to the club at 5 o'clock. I .... my English lesson.

a) am going to take b) will take
c) am taking d) will be taking

6) You .... give me a lift to the railway station, father will do.

a) need to b) don't have to c) must d) mustn't

7) According to her arrangements, Mariam .... a course at sports centre.

a) will do b) will be doing c) does d) is doing

8) Have you got an idea where the competition will take .... ?

a) place b) part c) after d) over

9) June is often .... month of the year in Egypt.

a) hotter than b) the hottest c) hot d) hottest

0) Your bag is as .... as that one over there.

a) heavier than b) heaviest c) heavy d) heavier

1) My sister sometimes .... the meals for us.

a) eats b) repairs c) prepares d) hides

12) The Americans .... Thanksgiving with a turkey.

a) remind b) contact c) complete d) celebrate

13) Listen! Someone is .... you out.

a) calling b) saying c) speaking d) telling

14) Which is .... ,a car or a plane ?

a) most expensive b) more expensive
c) much expensive d) expensive

15) You .... touch this uncovered electric wire. It's dangerous.

a) don't have to b) needn't
c) aren't obliged d) mustn't

16) This soldier raised his .... and began fighting.

a) knife b) finger c) sword d) axe

B) Reading comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Ancient documents talk about the use of foods , spices . and herbs as medicine . For example, ancient Egyptian writings from 1500 B.C. mention garlic . They recommend garlic for headaches. The ancient Romans knew about the benefits of garlic, too . Around 110 A.D., the Roman writer Pliny wrote that garlic cured over 60 illnesses.

Another important food in traditional medicine is grapes. The ancient Romans believed that grapes and raisins (dried grapes) cured many illnesses. Some people drank grape juice for sore throats. Other people used raisins for stomach problems. Some people even believed that grapes helped to heal tumors (lumps or growths in or on the body).

Ginger is another healthy food in ancient and traditional medicine. People used ginger over 2,500 years ago for many health problems. Confucius, the Chinese philosopher, wrote about it in the fifth century. B.C. Traditional Chinese medicine prescribes ginger for stomach problems , sore throats , fever , and flu . Ginger is also used in an ancient system of medicine from India (Ayurvedic medicine) . In this system , ginger is used to treat arthritis .

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ayurvedic medicine is related to ....

a) China b) Egypt c) India d) Greece

2. Ginger was used .... years ago .

a) 1500 b) 110 c) 5000 d) 2500

3. Tumours are healed by eating or drinking ....

a) tomatoes b) potatoes c) vegetables d) grapes

4. In the Indian ancient system of medicine, ginger is used to treat ....

a) tonsillitis b) dermatitis c) arthritis d) gastritis

5. The Romans used raisins for .... problems.

a) liver b) spleen c) lung d) stomach

6. Which disease in the passage deals with one's joints?

a) Headache b) Arthritis c) Tumors d) Fever

7. It's known that .... medicines have no side effects.

a) chemical b) biological c) ecological d) herbal

8. Garlic is highly recommended as a cure for ....

a) fever b) arthritis c) headache d) sore throat

C) Translation

a) Translate into English :

من الضروري ان نحمي مياه النيل و المياه الجوفية من التلوث لان الماء أصبح أكثر قيمة من النفط خاصة أن معظم الدول تعاني من ندرة المياه.

....

....

b) Translate into Arabic :

Practising sports is a practical way to help the young keep away from bad habits. They should participate in any sport to keep fit.

....

....

D) Writing

Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:

" Farming in a sustainable way "

....

....

Test (5) Based on Units 1, 2 & 3

A) Choose the TWO correct answers out of the Five options given:

1) In fact, prices ....from time to time.
   a) arise b) arouse c) go up
   d) rise e) raise
2) Wheat has recently become the most important .... for all countries.
   a) crop b) yield c) material
   d) material e) product
3) It's a short .... It consists of two acts only.
   a) performance b) novel c) rumour
   d) tale e) play
4) The player will have to give up playing football due to a .... injury.
   a) slight b) simple c) serious
   d) dangerous e) trivial

B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5) Heba learnt how to cook .... her own.
   a) in b) for c) on d) by
6) At this time tomorrow, I .... my uncle.
   a) will visit b) will be visiting
   c) am visiting d) an going to visit
7) I'm terribly tired at the moment, I ....home.
   a) am going to go b) will go
   c) go d) will be going
8) You ....follow the traffic rules regularly or you'll be fined.
   a) needn't b) may c) must d) will
9) The headmaster has the .... to punish naughty pupils.
   a) energy b) strength c) mood d) power
10) It's my intention, I .... join the Faculty of Medicine.
   a) will b) am going to c) may d) will be

11) Don't worry, Sama .... the bag for you.

a) **will be carrying** b) **is carrying**
c) **will carry** d) **is going to carry**

12) The murderer .... to be sent to prison for committing that crime.

a) **deserves** b) **complains** c) **praises** d) **wants**

13) Hadeer is good at all the school subjects, but she likes English ....

a) **the most** b) **the most of** c) **most** d) **most of**

14) You put too much salt in my dish; it has become ....

a) **delicious** b) **tasty** c) **sweet** d) **salty**

15) The bank manager says that all the clients .... wear a face mask to be admitted into the bank.

a) **have to** b) **may** c) **will** d) **needn't**

16) The expert will .... his opinion on the best farming methods.

a) **make** b) **find** c) **take** d) **give**

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In the early days, people thought social media would have a positive effect on family life. It brought the whole family together in one room. It also put an end to the usual family quarrels. Everyone stayed quiet and just listened, for a change.

But now it is clear that all the effects are negative. Some researchers believe that it prevents parents and children from having normal relationships. The members of the family may be sitting together, but most of the time no one talks. No one relates to anyone else in the room. The only communication that happens is one way from the actors to each individual. And this brings about another problem. Many children spend most of their free time this way. This means that they have no idea of what family life can be. The picture they get of a family, from what they see, is false and too simple.

It leaves out many negative aspects and they may not be able to tolerate family life with its complexities. We can also say that, besides the advantages, there are many disadvantages.



Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d:

1) The positive effect of social media is that the family ....

a) stay separate b) stay together c) quarrel d) just listen

2) One disadvantage of social media is the prevalence of .... among family members.

a) silence b) fights c) quarrels d) obesity

3) To "bring about" something bad is to .... it.

a) solve b) cause c) eliminate d) prevent

4) The word "complexities " is nearer in meaning to ....

a) facilities b) amenities c) minorities d) hardships

5) According to the passage, social media is ....

a) good

b) bad

c) a mixed blessing

d) neither a nor b

6) Normal family relationships .... due to social media.

a) grows b) increases c) prosper d) decline

7) Which verb in the passage means " to deal with something unpleasant or annoying " ?

a) spend b) tolerate c) prevent d) bring

8) The underlined pronoun " they " refers to ....

a) children

b) relationships

c) researchers

d) none of the above

C) Translation

a) Translate into English :

لا تترك الاطعمة مكشوفة لكي لا تصبح مصدراً للعدوي بالجراثيم الضارة التي تنقل الأمراض المعدية من مكان لآخر.

....

....

b) Translate into Arabic :

Never eat food later than the expiry date to be healthy, so labels should be read carefully.

....

....

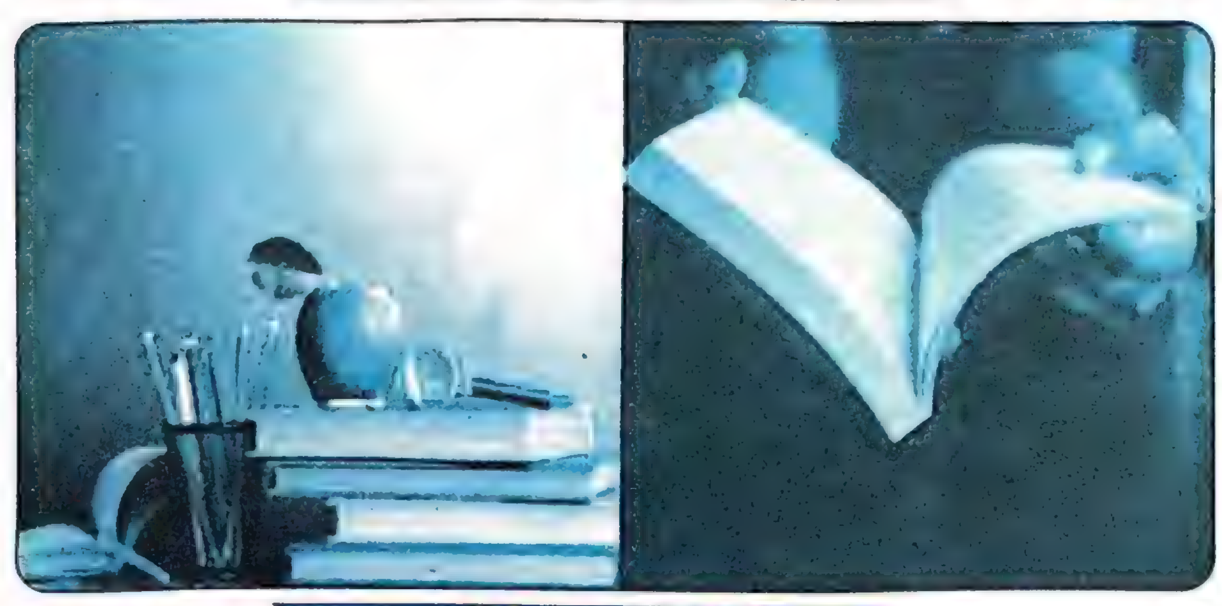
Write an email of about (180) words to a friend from the UAE to tell him about a traditional farm in Egypt. Your friend's name is Seif .

....

Unit 4

Changing English تغيير الإنجليزية

SB pages : 42- 51
WB pages : 110 - 115



Objectives

Reading : An article about the effect of messaging on English today; Text messages; A text about Shakespeare and language; A blog post.

Writing : A blog post about mobile phone use and its effects.

Listening : A speaker talking about messaging; Tips on how to write a successful blog post.

Speaking : A debate

Language : reported speech: could / should have + past participle; reporting orders, requests and advice abbreviation.

Life Skills : Communication.

Unit 4 Changing English

Part 1 Reading

A) Highlighted words

abbreviation	a shortened form of a word or phrase.	اختصار
emoji	a small digital image or icon used to express an idea.	رمز تعبيري
formal	done according to rules.	رسمي
innovator	a person who introduces new ideas.	مبتكر
linguist	a person skilled in foreign languages.	لغوي / عالم لغه
tone	the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking.	نبرة الصوت/نغمة الصوت
misunderstand	Not to understand properly.	يسيء الفهم
frown	having a facial expression that shows you are not happy or pleased.	يعبس/ يتجهم

New Vocabulary

text messaging (n.)	كتابة رسالة نصية	teenagers (n.)	مراهقين
adults (n.)	بالغين	suggest (v.)	يقترح
punctuation (n.)	ترقيم	actually (adv.)	فعلا
spelling (n.)	هجاء	argue (v.)	يجادل
fun (n.)	متعة	technology (n.)	تقنية
useful (adv.)	مفيد	damage (v.)	يدمر/يتلف
add (v.)	يضيف	suitable (adj.)	مناسب
connect (v.)	يوصل / يربط	no longer	لم يعد
comfortable (adj.)	مريح	correctly (adv.)	بشكل صحيح
record (v.)	يسجل	introduce (v.)	يقدم
procedure (n.)	اجراء	basic (adj.)	اساس
sound (v.)	يبدو	create (v.)	يخلق/يبدع

difficult (adj.)	صعب	describe (v.)	يصف
improve (v.)	يحسن	situations (n.)	مواقف
devices (n.)	اجهزة	remove (v.)	يزيل
seem (v.)	يبدو	prefixes (n.)	البدايات
communicate (v.)	يتصل	suffixes (n.)	النهايات
headline (n.)	عنوان رئيسي	endless (adj)	بلا نهاية
smart phones (n.)	هواتف ذكية	results (n.)	نتائج
solutions	حلول	link (n.)	رابط
support (v.) (n.)	دعم/يساند/يدعم	positive (adj.)	ايجابي
Vikings (n.)	اسكندنيافي	famous (adj.)	مشهور
Greek (adj.)	يوناني/ اغريقي	blog (n.)	مدونة
interests (n.)	ميول/ اهتمامات	survey (n.)	دراسة استطلاعية
social media (n.)	التواصل الاجتماعي	personal (adj.)	شخصي
readers (n.)	قراء	confusing (adj.)	مربك
numbers (n.)	ارقام	healthy (adj.)	صحي
communication (n.)	اتصال/ تواصل	grandparents (n.)	أجداد
require	يتطلب	conclusion (n.)	خاتمة
introduction (n.)	مقدمة	effects	آثار
proper (adj)	ملائم/ مناسب	mansion (n.)	بيت كبير فخم
recognisable (adj.)	يمكن التعرف عليها	hobbies (n.)	هوايات
findings (n.)	اكتشافات	expert (n.)	خبير

B) Synonyms المرادفات

Word	Synonyms
formal رسمي	conventional / traditional / ceremonial / fixed
linguist عالم لغة / لغوي	bilingual person / multilingual person / interpreter / dictionary maker
tone نغمه	sound / voice / intonation
misunderstand يسئ الفهم	misapprehend / misinterpret / confuse / misread

frown يعبس / يتجهم	make a face / glare
adult بالغ	man / woman / lady / grown-up
teenager مراهق	adolescent / young person / boy / girl / kid
argue يجادل	claim / declare / contend / reason / proclaim
useful مفيد	functional / helpful / practical / rewarding gainful / serviceable
record يسجل	write down / take down / document / register
blog مدونة	personal website / online column / book / weblog
positive إيجابي	constructive / practical / worthwhile / hopeful beneficial / confident
seem يبدو	appear / look / sound
interests ميول / اهتمامات	attentiveness / entertainment /relaxation / recreation / hobby / pastime
famous مشهور / معروف	well known / notable / respected / leading distinguished
connect يربط / يوصل	attach / join / fasten / fix / link
personal شخصي	distinctive / private / particular / individual
technology تكنولوجيا	automation / machinery / mechanization / robotics / applied science
describe يصف	relate / report / narrate / express
survey دراسة استقصائية	study / review / overview / consideration / take stock of
basic أساسي / رئيسي	fund mental / primary / principal / chief / elemental / essential
correctly بشكل صحيح	accurately / right / faithfully / perfectly / exactly
confusing مربك / محير	mystifying / puzzling / perplexing
expert خبير	specialist / master
proper ملائم / مناسب	actual / true / real / genuine
require يتطلب / يستلزم	necessitate / demand / involve / entail

C) Antonyms

add	يجمع/يضيف	subtract	يطرح
understand	يفهم	misunderstand	يسيء الفهم
formal	شكلي/ رسمي	informal	غير رسمي
worried	قلق	calm	هادىء
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
no longer	لم يعد	still	مازال
abbreviate	يختصر	lengthen	يطول
confuse	يربك	pacify	يهدأ
argue	يجادل	submit	يخضع/ يستسلم
use	يستخدم	misuse	يسئ استخدام
changed	متغير	unchanged	بلا تغيير
like	يحب	dislike	يكره

D) Important Prepositions

different **from**	مختلف عن	a lot **of**	كثير من
respond **to**	يستجيب لـ	learn **about**	يتعلم عن
apply **for**	يتقدم لـ	chat **with**	يدردش مع
deal **with**	يتعامل مع	instead **of**	بدلا من
effects on	اثار علي	communicate **with**	يتصل بـ
agree **with**	يتفق مع	change **into**	يتحول الي
thank **for**	يشكر علي	look **after**	يعتني بـ
look **for**	يبحث عن	go **back**	يرجع/ يعود
add **to**	يضيف الي	advantage **of**	ميزة لـ
comment **on/ about**	يعلق علي	spend **on**	ينفق علي

E) Idiomatic Expressions

▪ as soon as possible	بسرعة بقدر الامكان
▪ make communication quicker	تسرع الاتصال
▪ appear more often	تظهر غالبا
▪ introduce new ideas	يقدم افكار جديدة
▪ whether or not you like	سواء تحب ام لا

• stay (keep) in touch with	يبقي علي اتصال مع
• Don't get upset	لا تنزعج
• as a response to	كرد علي / كاستجابة لـ ......
• apply for a job	يتقدم لوظيفة
• take a photo of	يلتقط صورة لـ ......
• make new words	يؤلف (يكون) كلمات جديدة
• for example	علي سبيل المثال
• make different sounds	يحدث أصواتا مختلفة
• a four-year-old sister	أخت في سن الرابعة
• offer advice	يقدم نصيحة
• offer solutions	يقدم حلول
• make a negative comment about (on)	يحدث تعليق سلبي علي
• ever since	منذ ذلك الحين
• remain uchanged	تبقي بلا تغيير
• record the results	يسجل النتائج
• organise ideas clearly	ينظم الافكار بوضوح
• in general = generally	بصفة عامة
• spend too much time on	يقضي وقتا كثيرا في

F) Word Families

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
comment يعلق	comment تعليق	commentary تعليقي	----------
abbreviate يختصر	abbreviation اختصار	abbreviated مختصر	----------
correct يصحح	correction تصحيح	correct صحيح	correctly بشكل صحيح
understand يفهم	understanding فهم	understandable مفهوم	understandably بشكل مفهوم
innovate يبتكر / يبدع	innovation ابداع/ ابتكار	innovated مبدع	----------
communicate يتصل	communication اتصال	communicative اتصالي	----------

confuse يربك	confusion ارتباك	confusing مربك	confusingly بشكل مربك
describe يصف	description وصف	descriptive وصفي	----------------------
add يضيف	addition أضافة	additional اضافي	additionally بطريقة اضافية
comfort يريح	comfort راحة	comfortable مريح	comfortably بشكل مريح

G) Language Notes

- **voice** made by people. صوت انسان
- **sound** something that can be heard. صوت أي شيء (آله مثلا)

✓ Raise your voice if you want to answer.
✓ Sound can travel over very long distances.

- **damage** harm or spoil something. يتلف/ يضر
- **destroy** damage badly. يدمر بشكل تام (لم يعد له وجود)

✓ The house was badly damaged in the fire.
✓ The building was destroyed by fire.

- **affect** (v.) يؤثر علي
- **effect on** (n.) theresult of something. تأثير علي

✓ Pollution affects all living creatures badly.
✓ Smoking has bad effects on our health.

- **compare with** يقارن ب
- **compare to** يشبه ب

✓ We should compare our educational system with others.
✓ Poets often compare sleep to death.

- **answer** (written reaction). رد او اجابة علي سؤال كتابي
- **reply** (oral response). رد شفوي

✓ Can you give me an answer to the first question ?
✓ I am busy writing a reply to Adham' s email.

- change — alter. — يغير الحالة الموجودة
- exchange — give (sth) and receive another. — يستبدل (أفكار/ عملة)
  - ✓ I would like to change my clothes before going out.
  - ✓ What is the exchange rate today? ما سعر الصرف اليوم؟
- suitable — right for (sb) or (sth). — مناسب (لشخص ما / شيء ما)
- fit — healthy — صحي/ لائق بدنيا
  - ✓ This film isn't suitable for young chilldren .
  - ✓ I do a lot of exercise to keep fit .
- stay — = remain (continue to be) — يبقي/ يظل
- rest — pause for a break — يسترح
  - ✓ Nothing remains/ stays the same for ever للأبد.
  - ✓ Let's rest for a bit before finishing the climb.
- linguist — skilled in foreign languages. — عالم لغة (لغوي)
- linguistics — the study of language. — علم دراسة للغة
  - ✓ He speaks nine foreign languages. He is an accomplished linguist .
  - ✓ linguistics is a relatively new academic subject.
- message — a verbal or written communication. — رسالة لفظية/ كتابية
- massage — rubbing muscles and joints. — تدليك (العضلات والمفاصل)
  - ✓ I can't believe the number of messages I get today.
  - ✓ I have had a relaxing massage.

لاحظ هنا الاختصارات الآتية :

LOL	=	laugh at loud	يضحك بصوت عالي
cu l8r	=	See you later	أراك لاحقاً
gr8	=	Great	هائل / عظيم !
plz	=	please	من فضلك
idk	=	I don't know	لا أعرف
2moro	=	tomorrow	غدا
thx	=	thank you.	شكرا
ASAP	=	as soon as possible	بسرعة بقدر الامكان

The Reading Text SB Page (43) Lesson 1

Plz read this article ASAP.

For any readers who can't understand the language of text messaging, the translation is: Please, read this article as soon as possible. It is great. I hope you like it.

In text messages, abbreviations, emojis and numbers are all used to make communication quicker. The language of text message doesn't require correct spelling, or difficult grammar and punctuation.

Messaging language is appearing in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis. Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!!! So, is messaging language damaging English?

Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable in formal emails. And now teachers are worried that some teenagers are no longer able to speak or write using English correctly. However, some linguists suggest that the people who use messaging language are actually language innovators, introducing new ideas into English.

They argue that messaging language is quick, short, and communicates a lot in a small space.

Whether or not you like messaging languages, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the basic abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short messages!

The Reading Text SB Page (46) Lesson 3

Shakespeare and the English language

Language is always changing, and new words are created all the time. We need new words to describe new technology, ideas and situations. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that. But when everyone started doing it, the

word " selfie" became very useful, and it was added to dictionaries in 2013. Many famous dictionaries add new words every year, and sometimes they remove words and phrases that we don't use anymore. Skakespeare was a great innovator with language, and he added more words and phrases into English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, changing nouns into verbs, and connecting words to make new words. He also added prefixes and suffixes, for example, he created uncomfortable from comfortable. Today the language that Shakespeare used can sound difficult, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time.

Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

The Reading Text SB Page (47) Lesson 4

Emoji fun!

Yesterday, my four- year- old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone. The problem is, there are no words, just a long line of emojis. This is confusing because our grandparents think the messages are from me!

Should I have taken the phone away from my sister?
When a child begins to learn how to speak, they first make different sounds. It seems that children do the same with messaging. They use emojis rather than proper words to communicate what they want to say.

But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to communicate. With text messages, children can receive and read replies which are written just for them. I am sure this will make them feel special and they will want to communicate more.

So, instead of taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "Send your grandparents a message."

Listening Changing English

Listening : A speaker talking about messaging; Tips on how to write a successful blog post

Set in video script box] Video script

Smartphones are changing the way we choose to communicate with each other. More people use their phones to send and receive messages than they do to make phone calls. Messaging is quick and cheap. We can keep in contact with friends, make and check arrangements, send photos, ask questions and receive answers within seconds.

Messaging is now more popular than emails, especially between friends and family. Messaging increased by 7,000% in the ten years between 2007 and 2017 and is still rising. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text messages are sent around the world every month. And it seems that teenagers send more than most adults.

Staying in contact with people is really important and messaging is a fun way to do this, but we need to remember that text messaging is not the same as having a conversation or spending time with someone: that's important too.

Listening [Audio icon] 1.19

[Set in audioscript box] Audioscript

Presenter : Hello everyone, thanks for joining me today on Afternoon Talk time. And today we are talking about messaging. My guest today is Dr Magda Morsy. She is the author of the book A Guide to Messaging which encourages us to use messaging positively. Welcome to the programme, Magda.

Dr Magda : Thank you. It's lovely to be here.

Presenter : So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have a 15-year-old daughter and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she came down to dinner very upset. She couldn't stop crying. Eventually she admitted that she was upset because of her friend. They were messaging and having fun, but then my daughter, Talia, had written LOL - laugh out loud - in response to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo. She waited for an hour, but

Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was and was worried that Mona was upset with her.

Dr Magda : This is a good example of why we need to be aware of the advantages and disadvantages of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.

Presenter : Because messaging is different to speaking face-to-face, isn't it?

Dr Magda : Exactly! Sometimes face-to-face communication can be confusing, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't interested in what you are saying, but messaging can be much more confusing. And this is basically because you can't see the other person's face – is he or she smiling or frowning? And you can't hear their voice – are they angry? Are they making a joke? Are they feeling sad? And you can't see their body movements. When we speak to someone face-to-face, we notice all these things; facial expressions, body movements and the tone of what they are saying. When we message, we have to guess a lot of these things. This means we can often misunderstand what the other person is trying to communicate.

Presenter : So, that's the negative side of messaging. Is there a positive side?

Dr Magda : Yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying in touch with friends but remember that messaging is designed to be short and quick so don't expect to have long conversations, and don't get upset when you get one word or even an abbreviation or acronym as a response to your message.

Presenter: So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

Dr Magda: Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an immediate reply does not necessarily mean that the person is not interested in chatting with you. People are busy and they have got other things to do. So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour looking at her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone down and done something else and checked her phone later. And of course, if she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said, 'Can I call you?'

Presenter: So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more traditional communication is important.

Dr Magda: I am! Absolutely. Messaging is one form of communication not the only form of communication.

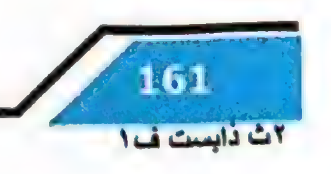
Presenter: Great- thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme .

Listening [Audio icon] 1.21

1 Listen to some tips on how to write a successful blog post. Take notes as you listen.

1 Speaker 1 : Tips on how to write a successful blog post:

1. Start with your topic. Think about what will interest and inform your reader.
2. Start with a headline for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
3. Find a suitable photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.
4. Plan the sections of your blog. Add a sub-heading for each section/new point.
5. Write your introduction paragraph. Be clear what the purpose of this blog post is. Speak to the reader – use first and third person. Include a question.
6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. Include images where useful. Do research to find facts to include.
7. **Write a conclusion. Refer back to your headline and your** introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself; use 'we'.
8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too frequently. Use an online thesaurus to avoid repeating the same word too many times.
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense to them?
10. Cite all your sources of information.



Exercises based on Vocabulary

A) Choose the TWO correct answers out of the Five options given:

1) Messaging language can't be used ....
   a) **globally** b) **wholly** c) **formally**
   d) **informally** e) **officially**

2) Messaging is great for .... in touch with friends.
   a) **making** b) **giving** c) **staying**
   d) **keeping** e) **playing**

3) If we get wrong message, it makes us ....
   a) **worried** b) **cheerful** c) **upset**
   d) **shy** e) **happy**

4) What annoyed me so much was her ....
   a) **ton** b) **tone** c) **tune**
   d) **voice expression** e) **facial expression**

5) I have a/an .... in my mind of how I want the garden to be.
   a) **image** b) **picture** c) **imaginary**
   d) **imaginative** e) **imaginable**

6) To enjoy talking to your friends, you should learn some of the .... abbreviations.
   a) **trivial** b) **minor** c) **basic**
   d) **fundamental** e) **subordinate**

7) The absence of punctuation marks in messaging language .... English.
   a) **damages** b) **ruins** c) **improves**
   d) **strengthen** e) **prevails**

8) What a pity! Some readers can't .... the language of text messaging.
   a) **spoil** b) **grasp** c) **understand**
   d) **spell** e) **translate**

9) Messaging is now more........................ than emails, especially between friends and family.
   a) **popular** b) **short** c) **long** d) **common** e) **rare**

10) Being a great .... with language, Shakespeare added more words into English language.
   a) **poet** b) **novelist** c) **dramatist** d) **innovator** e) **creator**

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d:

1) Please, send me a .... message to know the latest news.
   a) text b) texting c) texture d) textile
2) My son is an avid .... of science fiction.
   a) read b) reader c) reading d) readable
3) In this dictionary, (sth) is the ....for something.
   a) inclination b) abbreviation c) addiction d) creation
4) He is good at learning foreign language. He is a ....
   a) dramatist b) technician c) physician d) linguist
5) " Yours faithfully" is a .... way of ending a letter.
   a) normal b) formal c) former d) forward
6) How is text messaging different.......................formal English ?
   a) on b) in c) at d) from
7) My uncle is always introducing new ideas. He is a/ an ....
   a) generator b) coordinator c) innovator d) illustrator
8) Text messaging language is always used by.............................
   a) grandfathers b) grandmothers c) elders d) teenagers
9) .... make your text messages more lively and interesting.
   a) Abbreviations b) Emojis c) Spelling d) Numbers
10) One disadvantage of messaging language is that it .... teenagers' English.
   a) increases b) strengthens c) damages d) improves
11) The language of text messages is so simple that it doesn't .... correct spelling or punctuation.
   a) require b) acquire c) admire d) restrict
12) It's sorrowful that students get into university with little or no knowledge of .... marks.
   a) determination b) punctuation c) punctual d) punctuality
13) Even newly married couple sometimes ....for nothing.
   a) argue b) reconcile c) reassure d) resist

14) How can you ....in touch with your friends abroad?

a) look b) keep c) take d) knock

15) Don't get....................... over trivial matters. Try to be so sensible.

a) married b) beaten c) burnt d) upset

16) Which job would you like to apply ....?

a) to b) at c) for d) with

17) Don't be late, give me a......................... by tomorrow.

a) responsibility b) response c) responsible d) respond

18) Remember that messaging is designed to be..................and quick, it may be one word or just an abbreviation.

a) long b) boring c) interesting d) short

19) The ....in your voice shows what you are feeling or thinking of.

a) channel b) tone c) detecting d) quality

20) Language doesn't stop. New words are ....all the time.

a) spoken b) written c) heard d) created

21).........................are added to the beginning of the word.

a) Suffixes b) Prefixes c) Axis d) Taxes

22) Today, the language of Shakespeare seems ....to us but easy for people in his age.

a) simple b) short c) difficult d) long

23) It was Shakespeare who.................new words from other words.

a) spelt b) did c) made d) copied

24) Children use emojis rather than words to .... with each other.

a) mix b) communicate c) play d) contact

25) The instructions, given to me, are terribly .... Could you help me with them, please ?

a) confuse b) confused c) confusing d) confusion

26) A ....is a web page on which one can record opinions, links to other sites.

a) log b) blog c) block d) knock

27) Don't reply to a message if you feel ....

a) relaxed b) uncomfortable c) comfortable d) dizzy

29) I was worried not to ....personal information.
 a) post b) lose c) keep d) hide

30) Messaging has both negative and ....sides.
 a) pessimistic b) bad c) positive d) gloomy

31) The Eiffel Tower in Paris is a........................... landmark.
 a) advisable b) recognisable c) visible d) reliable

32) Many words in English and French have.......................meanings. They are the same.
 a) different b) similar c) various d) varied

33) Before writing an essay, you should.......................your ideas clearly.
 a) organise b) fascinate c) mediate d) create

34) It's desirable not to ....any negative comments on social media .
 a) do b) make c) avoid d) neglect

35) If we add the......................."ness" to the word sweet, it becomes a noun not an adjective.
 a) prefix b) sufficiency c) efficiency d) suffix

36) You completely ....the nature of the transport problem if you think that it can be solved by building more roads.
 a) mistrust b) misunderstand c) misspell d) misuse

37) Spending too much time on social media makes some students feel ....although they enjoy it .
 a) tired b) comfortable c) relaxed d) worried

38) The company has new .... for dealing with complaints.
 a) proceed b) procession c) procedures d) process

39) Her speech about cruelty to children had a great effect. It was very ....
 a) fruitless b) powerful c) powerless d) poor

40) We need the repairs done as ....as possible.
 a) sooner b) quick c) quicker d) soon

41) Great is abbreviated into ....
 a) Plz b) thx c) gr8 d) lol

41) The smaller coins were ……………………for the first time in 1992.

a) deduced b) introduced c) interrupted d) intruded

42) You can't enjoy talking to your friends unless you learn some …………………………… abbreviations

a) basic b) basis c) bases d) trivial

43) That building used to be a cinema but it is ……………………used now.

a) any longer b) no longer c) no sooner d) still

44) My computer has a programme which corrects my ………………mistakes.

a) spell b) spill c) spelling d) spilling

45) Would you …………………… my shoulders? They are aching me.

a) message b) text c) moister d) massage

46) Your job seems good, it ……………………really interesting.

a) tastes b) smells c) sounds d) feels

47) We asked her to ………………what kind of activities she did in her spare time.

a) describe b) discourage c) design d) desert

48) Police questioned him and he was ……………… ….arrested.

a) late b) lately c) latter d) later

49) The results of the experiment should be …………………… to ensure accuracy. لضمان الدقة

a) restored b) commented c) recorded d) thought

50) New words can be made by ………………… either prefixes or suffixes.

a) removing b) subtracting c) dividing d) adding

51) Which way of …………………… do you think is best ?

a) communicate b) communication

c) imagination d) hesitation

52) Thanks to language innovators, new ideas are introduced ……………… English.

a) for b) at c) with d) into

53) The …………………… of text messages is very simple.

a) intonation b) pronunciation c) language d) stress

54) Please, move over. Leave a .... for me beside you.

a) tip b) commission c) charge d) space

55) Can you pronounce my name .... without mistakes ?

a) correction b) corrected c) correctly d) correct

56) A C D – Rom can store more than 250,000 pages of typed ....

a) text b) tax c) fax d) texture

57) Sorry, your name is not .... in the list of players today.

a) enclosed b) included c) loaded d) stored

58) I'm .... you a cheque tonight.

a) portraying b) postponing c) posting d) possessing

59) If you want to write a successful blog, write down these ....

a) taps b) tapes c) lips d) tips

60) Shakespeare made a breakthrough in the English language. He .... words to make new ones.

a) contrasted b) connected c) contracted d) contacted

1- Translate into Arabic :

1. One has to work hard to realize his hopes and enjoy life before getting old. Without doing so, he will regret it.

....
....
....

2. The Egyptian government has taken some steps to promote education to keep up with international levels.

....
....
....

3. A successful person should learn to adapt to different situations to achieve the desirable goal. Some achievements stand unique throughout one's career.

....
....
....

4. Building good citizens and creating a productive society are the main aims of education. This will teach them self-reliance.

....

....

2- Translate into English :

١. تعد الحرف اليدويه هي مفتاح النجاح لكثير من الشباب في هذه الايام ومن الأفضل أن يتقنها الفرد في سن صغيره.

....

....

....

٢. ينبغي توجيه الاهتمام والرعاية لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة لكي يستمتعوا بحياتهم ويشعروا يتعاطف المجتمع معهم ومساندته لهم.

....

....

٣. لكي تستمتع بحياتك ، عليك التغلب علي كل مخاوفك التي تفسد عليك هذه المتعة وهذا يستلزم قدرا كبيرا من الحكمه والشجاعة.

....

....

٤. ينبغي ان نشجع الاطفال علي ممارسة الانشطة التي تكسبهم تجارب مفيدة وتساعدهم على قضاء أوقات فراغهم بصورة مفيده.

2) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :

" English as a foreign language"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Part (II) Focus on Language

1. Prefixes البدايات

تضاف في بداية الكلمة لكي تغير معناها مثل:

mis_ / re_ / un_ / im _ / dis_ / in_

وهناك بدايات أخرى مثل

(extra_ / ex_ / pre_ / up_ / de_ / out_ / over_ / uni_)

understand	يفهم	misunderstand	يسيء الفهم
read	يقرأ	reread	يعيد قراءة
wise	حكيم	unwise	غير عاقل
polite	مؤدب	impolite	وقح
honest	أمين	dishonest	خائن
sane	عاقل	insane	غير عاقل

2. Suffixes النهايات

توضع في نهاية الكلمة وتغير معناها ايضا، تحولها من فعل لأسم أو من فعل لصفة وهكذا

(less_ / er _ /_ness /_able)

وهناك نهايات أخرى مثل

(_ation / _fy / _ing / _age / _ship / _ism / _tant / _ment

care	يهتم	careless	مهمل
read	يـ قرأ	reader	قاريء
use	يستخدم	user	مستخدم
understand	يفهم	understandable	يمكن فهمه
comfort	راحة	comfortable	مريح

3. Reporting verbs أفعال القول

أفعال الإبلاغ وإعطاء الأوامر والنصائح والتحذير والوعد والاقتراح والدعوة والندم

2) Positive & Negative Reporting verbs

	v. + to + inf.	v. + obj. + to + inf.	v. + (prep.) + ing	v. + that + clause
Positive	instruct advise ask invite order tell remind offer	instruct advise invite order tell /ask beg remind offer encourage	suggest recommend insist on	agree say promise suggest
Negative	warn	warn	regret deny accuse (sb) of blame (sb) for	complain

could have + p.p

could have + p.p (past possibility) احتمال حدث شيء في الماضي

- He could have bought these eggs when he went out this morning.

could have + p.p

Past ability but the action was undone.

قدرة في الماضي ولكن لم تحدث (فرصة لم تغتنم)

- She could have bought a new phone, but she didn't .

couldn't have + p.p

couldn't have + p.p (past impossibility)

استحالة حدوث الشيء في الماضي.

- You couldn't have seen Dina today because she is in Germany at the moment.

should have + p.p
ought to have + p.p

should have + p.p
ought to have + p.p
كان ينبغي علي ان افعل كذا ولكني لم افعله.
Past regrets for not doing an action.
ندم علي عدم القيام بعمل الشيء في الماضي.

I should have worked hard at school . (but I didn't)

should have + p.p (forprediction)

should have + p.p (for prediction)
للتنبؤ مع كلمة " by now"

- They should have arrived by now.

shouldn't have + p.p
oughtn't to have + p.p

shouldn't have + p.p
oughtn't to have + p.p
Past regrets for doing an undesirable action.
ما كان ينبغي علي ان افعل------ لكنني فعلته
(ندم في الماضي علي القيام بعمل غير مرغوب فيه " النقد")

- Aya shouldn't have gone to sleep so late last night. (but she did)

Exercises based on Grammar

a) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The teacher................................ the class to stand up.
   a) told b) asked c) advised d) reminded
2. Tommy .... mum to buy him a cake.
   a) warned b) instructed c) asked d) encouraged
3. I.............................. quarelled with my friend yesterday, it was rude.
   a) should have b) shouldn't have
   c) could have d) couldn't have
4. Leila was lucky. She ....have been killed in the accident but she survived .
   a) must b) can c) could d) can't

5. The teacher .... Peter not to eat in class.
   a) told b) advised c) invited d) asked
6. My father .... me to enter the competition as he was sure I would win .
   a) warned b) encouraged c) claimed d) instructed
7. My mother .... me not to leave the door open at night.
   a) encouraged b) asked c) invited d) warned
8. It was rude of you to phone me late last night. you .... done that as I was fast asleep .
   a) should have b) shouldn't have c) must have d) would have
9. Why are you coming all that way on foot. you .... a taxi, but you didn't .
   a) could take b) could have taken c) should take d) must have taken
10. My sister .... me to book the tickets for the theatre.
   a) warned b) reminded c) invited d) ordered
11. She was .... to see a dentist.
   a) warned b) encouraged c) advised d) reminded
12. She.......................been killed in the car crash. Luckily she wasn't killed.
   a) could have b) must have
   c) can't have d) shouldn't have
13. Nada didn't turn off the oven before going to bed. She .... turned it off.
   a) should b) should have c) must have d) can't have
14. My brother didn't send our grandmother a birthday card. He .... sent her one.
   a) should have b) shouldn't have
   c) couldn't have d) will have
15. They destroyed parts of the rainforest. They ....that.
   a) should do b) must do
   c) shouldn't have done d) could do

16. " Please, stay with us tonight." He .... her to stay with them that night.
    a) encouraged b) asked c) reminded d) warned
17. " Don't lie down ". He..........................us not to lie down.
    a) warned b) told c) reminded d) invited
18. The flight attendant told the passengers.................... smoke in the toilets.
    a) to b) not to c) to not d) not for
19. " let's play football ." He...............................playing football
    a) warned b) asked c) begged d) suggested
20. The park attendant .... us not to walk on the grass.
    a) warned b) invited c) suggested d) reminded
21. "Leave me alone." She............................him to leave her alone .
    a) advised b) told c) warned d) invited
22. The teacher told the class.............hand in the homework on Monday.
    a) to b) not to c) if d) that
23. She............................me not to tell her father what she had done .
    a) encouraged b) suggested c) begged d) persuaded
24. My wife .... me to post the letter.
    a) invited b) warned c) ordered d) reminded
25. Flora ....Emily to buy the black shoes not the brown ones.
    a) ordered b) reminded c) advised d) suggested
26. The detective .... her to open her bag.
    a) ordered b) encouraged c) invited d) promised
27. " Would you mind opening the window 2" . She .... me to open the window.
    a) reminded b) asked c) promised d) denied

28. " Why didn't you call me last night? " You .... that.
   a) should do b) could do
   c) shouldn't have done d) should have done
29. Sadly, you didn't follow a diet. You .... followed it to lose weight .
   a) should have b) can't have c) must have d) may have
30. It was the right thing to clean my car after using it but you didn't. You .... that .
   a) should do b) must do
   c) must have done d) should have done
31. It was wrong of you to leave the gate open at night. You .... closed it.
   a) shouldn't have b) should have
   c) may have d) might have
32. You .... taken my advice, but you didn't.
   a) should b) can't have c) should have d) ought to
33. I .... languages at school when I was younger.
   a) should study b) ought to study
   c) ought to have studied d) must study
34. She..........................us to be back early.
   a) warned b) invited c) asked d) suggested
35. Why did you gain weight ? You .... lost weight.
   a) should have b) will have c) must have d) can have
36. I was asked ....attend the interview.
   a) to b) if c) that d) for
37. The police ....people not to go out during demonstrations.
   a) reminded b) encouraged c) warned d) offered
38. The prime minister was .... to leave immediately.
   a) invited b) encouraged c) reminded d) advised
39. We .... to take them to the airport.
   a) suggested b) invited c) reminded d) offered

40. Why didn't you clean the windows today? You .... cleaned them but you didn't.

a) should have
b) shouldn't have
c) must have
d) would have

B) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic :-

" What you should or shouldn't have done when you were at school"

Regan : I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers.

Edmund : That is correct madam, he spent some time with them.

Regan : Then the soldiers have given him the idea of plotting against his father, trying to kill him, so that he can use his father's money. I have just had a message from my sister Goneril about the soldiers. She has warned me to be careful of them. If they come to my house, I won't be there.

Cornwall : Edmund, I hear that you have been a good son to your father.

Edmund : It was my duty, sir.

Gloucester : Edmund told me of Edgar's plan, and he got this cut on his arm when he tried to stop him.

Cornwall : Is anyone following Edgar ?

Gloucester : Yes, I have sent some guards.

Cornwall : The guards must arrest him. Edmund, I would like you to work for me. I need man like you that I can trust.

Edmund : I would be happy to help you, sir.

Gloucester: Thank you, Cornwall.

(They exist)

(In the countryside. Edgar enters)

Edgar : I have heard people say that I am guilty! But I was not caught because I hid in this old tree. It is not safe for me to go to ay port now. Guards are looking for me , so I must disguise myself as a beggar. I will change my clothes and make my face and hair look dirty.

(He changes his clothes)

I will wear these clothes of a poor man, and live outside under the rain. Nobody will see Edgar any more. From now, I will call myself poor tom.

(Edgar exits)

(Enter Lear, fool and knight, Kent is in the stocks)

Kent : Good morning my lord.

King Lear : ***(Looks in this belief at Kent in the stocks)*** What has happened ? Who did this to you ?

Kent : It was your daughter Regan and her husband Cornwall, sir.

King Lear : But you are working for the king! They should not do this with you! This is terrible, Where is my daughter ?

(king Lear exits)

Kent : Fool, why has the king got some few soldiers now? Fool: he has no money, so he has fewer people to help him. But I will be faithful to him; the Fool will always say, and let the wise men run away.

(King Lear and Gloucester enter together)

King Lear : Why don't they want to speak to me ? You say they are sick ? They are tired ? That is no answer.

Gloucester : I am sorry, your majesty, but you know that , the **Duke of Cornwall** easily feels angry. He won't change his mind.

King Lear : What ? He is angry! Well, I am angry, too.

(He sees Kent in the stocks again)

Why is he sitting in the stocks ? Go and tell the duke of Cornwall and his wife I want to speak to them now .

(Gloucester exits)

King Lear : Oh, my heart, my unhappy heart !

(Cornwall, Regan , Gloucester, and servants enter)

Regan : Father, I am pleased to see you.

King Lear : My dear daughter Regan, your sister is nothing to me. Oh Regan, she has been so cruel to me! You won't believe how badly she has behaved.

Regan : I don't think my sister could be unkind to you. If she has stopped your badly behaved soldiers, she has only done it to help you.

King Lear : I am very angry with her.

Regan : Father, please go back to my sister's house, you are the one who is wrong not my good sister Goneril.

Exercises based on Act 2, Scene 1

a) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) When my brother closed the door on my fingers, I ....out so that people could hear me.
   a) shouted b) called c) phoned d) picked
2) It seems that football players are secretly ....against the coach as they don't like him.
   a) plotting b) learning c) pressing d) beating
3) All the ships had to remain in their ....due to the bad weather.
   a) cages b) caves c) ports d) huts
4) There was a ....at every door in the castle to protect the king.
   a) servant b) guard c) master d) governess
5) I will try to .... my mother to let me go to the cinema tomorrow.
   a) force b) oblige c) threaten d) persuade
6) Look! Someone is offering a / an ....if we find the lost mobile phone .
   a) reward b) prize c) award d) profit
7) It was like a .... in the back when my friend told my classmates my secret.
   a) lab b) sap c) tap d) stab
8) If you get a benefit from something, you .... from it.
   a) miss b) lose c) profit d) suffer
9) The police will..............................the suspect to see where he goes .
   a) catch b) arrest c) follow d) hunt
10) When the hero died at the end of the film, my heart was ....
   a) beating b) running c) damaging d) broken
11) My mother usually gives money to any..................she sees on the street.
   a) passer-by b) pedestrian c) beggar d) master

12) Even during the difficult times, the soldiers remained .... to the king.

a) dishonest b) disobedient c) cunning d) faithful

13) The children .... to be kings and queens when they are playing.

a) pretend b) attend c) lend d) mend

14) Everyone looked at him in........................when my brother said he wanted to climb the mountain.

a) sorrow b) belief c) grief d) disbelief

15) At the last minute, my sister always .... up her mind about what to wear.

a) does b) makes c) doubts d) hesitates

16) The students were almost late for the exam but .... here just in time .

a) got b) took c) looked d) knocked

17) Surprisingly, enough money............. problems among family members.

a) leads b) causes c) solves d) puts

18) One player tried to .... during the golf competition. He moved the ball without being seen.

a) beat b) cheat c) practise d) run

19) You are actually a .... if you try to cheat in the exam like that .

a) coward b) foolish c) fool d) hero

20) I felt frightened when I saw..................... bearer walking in the street.

a) fruit b) luggage c) rubbish d) sword

b) Write a story of about (180) words on the following topic :

" Money causes problems among family members, to what extent is it true?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

(Part IV) General Exercises



A) Highly distinguished تمارين للفائقين

Choose the correct words from a, b, c, or d:

1) She was lucky enough; she........................have been killed.
   a) can b) must c) would d) could
2) My father .... me a large sum of money.
   a) suggested b) reminded c) offered d) asked
3) We should honour..........................who can improve our lives and create new devices.
   a) illustrators b) demonstrators
   c) generators d) innovators
4) There is something wrong with that machine. I want to know who ....it.
   a) made b) did c) played d) created
5) While checking exam papers, ...and grammar mistakes should be taken into consideration.
   a) writing b) pronouncing c) reading d) spelling
6).....................are people who can master more than one language.
   a) Technicians b) Novelists c) Poet d) Linguists
7) She .... have been late. Luckily ,she wasn't late.
   a) must b) could c) should d) would
8) You .... tried harder, but you didn't, so your team lost.
   a) should have b) shouldn't have
   c) oughtn't have d) must have
9) It would have been better if he had told her the truth. This means he........................... her the truth.
   a) should tell b) ought to tell
   c) must have told d) should have told
10) In case of not being able to speak to me directly, please , send or leave a ....
   a) massage b) message c) messenger d) mess

b) Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It is said that thirteen to fifteen percent of the Egyptian population is disabled. If you go through the streets of Cairo for just fifteen minutes, you will come across at least twenty people of visible disabilities. Most of them are men because disabled women usually stay at home just like crouch men without any legs and blind men. They either beg or sell paper handkerchiefs.

There are very few organizations which train parents and relatives of children who are mentally challenged to coach and encourage their children to get on with life. Although disabled people get ID, it is not of much benefit for them. They need more facilities to help them live independent life. They should be provided with health care, literacy programmes and suitable jobs.

Answer the following questions :

1) The underlined word "They" refers to................
 a) men with one leg b) men on crutches
 c) all the disabled d) blind men

2) We should help the disabled to lead a........................ life
 a) normal b) dull c) strange d) hard

3) The handicapped have an ID, but it gives them ....benefit.
 a) great b) a lot of c) no d) big

4) Most of the disabled we see in the streets are........................ .
 a) women b) men c) girls d) pupils

5) The adverb " mentally " is related to the ....
 a) mind b) body c) both d) neither

6) The antonym of " visible " is ....
 a) seen b) unseen c) noticeable d) recognizable

7) If jobs are described as suitable, they are ....
 a) profitable b) poor c) convenient d) well-paid

8) Having an ID for the disabled is .... for them.
 a) useless b) valueless c) worthless d) all mentioned

c) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:

" Money doesn't bring happiness"

....

....

B) Translation

a) Translate into Arabic :

1. Education is an investment in the future of the country. Due care should be given to it to get the utmost benefit of it.

....

....

2. What most teachers fail to teach inside their classrooms can be taught in the playgrounds. Physical education shouldn't be ignored.

....

....

b) Translate into English :

١. انصحك باستشارة الطبيب إذا ما شعرت بالتعب أو ارتفاع درجة الحرارة حتي يستطيع تشخيص المرض وتحديد العلاج المناسب.

....

....

٢. يجب ان تزود المكتبات العامة بالكتب لنشر الثقافة بين جميع المواطنين وبهذه الطريقة يمكن نشر الوعي بين مختلف طبقات الشعب.

....

....

٣. السياحة هي وسيلة لإظهار حضارة الأمه القديمة والحديثه وهذا يتم عن طريق الزيارات آلتي يقوم بها السائحين للأماكن التاريخيه.

....

....

٤. أن الطلاب ذو الاحتياجات الخاصة في حاجة الي معلمين لديهم خبرات كبيرة حيث يكون لديهم الخبره في التعامل معهم بطريقة صحيحة.

....

....



A Model Essay موضوع مجاب عنه

Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:
" School activities "

School activities الأنشطة المدرسية

In fact, we all agree that learning at school is not an end in itself. That is , modern educational systems aim at giving the pupils the chance to practise different activities at school other than learning. This helps the pupils to develop their characters in a positive way.

The new tendency of education nowadays is to learn how to learn. Schools should help students solve their problems and provide them with the up-to –date technology that helps increase their scope of knowledge. This will certainly train the pupils to be self-dependent and do things by themselves.

A student should learn now how to operate an internet line and search for information on all branches of knowledge. Students do that while being at home. Schools should teach pupils how to check up their experiment results with other colleagues on the other end of the line. Teachers should encourage their students to do school outdoor scientific experiments.

Finally, one can say that modern educational theories tend to encourage students to learn by themselves. That is why, it has become necessary for us to cope with all the recent advances in all fields, especially education.

(Part V)



Exercises from the Students' books & the workbooks

تمارين من كتاب الطالب و كتاب الأعمال التحريرية

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1) The change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking is defined as ....

a) tune b) loan c) moan d) tone

2) To ....something means you can't understand it properly.

a) misunderstand b) misspell c) mislead d) misuse

3) Women don't .... have to imitate men to be successful.

a) necessary b) necessarily c) necessity d) necessitate

4) ....means to have an angry expression on your face.

a) fly b) frown c) laugh d) cheer up

5) Ashraf ....been unkind to his sister, Dareen. He knew she would be upset.

a) should have b) shouldn't have c) could have d) must have

6) Hamdi was working with me all day, so you ....seen him at the park.

a) should have b) could have c) couldn't have d) must have

7) Kamal......................helped Fawzi. He had the ability to do so but he didn't because they aren't friends anymore.

a) should have b) could have c) ought to have d) can't have

8) Why hasn't he called ? Tarek said he would call when he got to the hotel and he ....arrived by now.

a) shouldn't have b) could have c) should have d) must have

9 Thank you. It is a fantastic gift, but you .... spent so much money on me.

a) should have b) could have c) would have d) shouldn't have

10) I .... gone to bed earlier last night. I am really tired today.
a) must have
b) could have
c) shouldn't have
d) can't have

11) We don't usually use.........................English when we send text messages.
a) local b) formal c) informal d) casual

12) In the world of technology, an ....is someone who can improve or create new devices.
a) dictator b) organiser c) editor d) innovator

13) "ASAP" is a/an .... of as soon as possible.
a) indication b) domination c) declaration d) abbreviation

14) I .... practised playing the piano last week, but I was lazy and now I regret it.
a) shouldn't have b) can't have c) should have d) will have

15) You ....at your sister, you knew it would make her unhappy and it was the wrong thing to do.
a) shouldn't shout
b) must shout
c) shouldn't have shouted
d) can't have shouted

16) You.........................the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it is gone now and it is too late.
a) could have caught
b) shouldn't catch
c) should have caught
d) can't have caught

17) You .... seen Manal in the park this morning. She has been with me at my house all day.
a) could have b) couldn't have c) should have d) won't have

18) I can't believe that you still haven't received the parcel. I sent it three weeks ago, so it .... arrived by now.
a) shouldn't have b) must have c) should have d) can't have

19) He ....a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work hard.
a) could be
b) could have been
c) should have been
d) must be

Test (6) based on Unit (4)

A) Choose the TWO correct answers out of the Five options given:

1) New words are added to famous dictionaries every day and old ones are ....
   a) remained b) removed c) recycled
   d) moved e) displaced
2) Messages containing no words are very .... to former generations who had techno phobia .
   a) confuse b) embarrassing c) interesting
   d) exciting e) confusing
3) It is really great for a radio producer to ....a show like this.
   a) calculate b) generate c) innovate
   d) create e) dominate
4) I was having trouble or difficulty ....my feelings to others.
   a) commanding b) communicating c) comparing
   d) imparting e) competing

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

5) It is possible that he has spent all the money. He ....spent all the money.
   a) could have b) must have
   c) can't have d) should have
6) Why didn't you take a course in English ? You ....taken it to be fluent .
   a) shouldn't have b) should have
   c) would have d) couldn't have
7) "Help me, please." Gehan......................... Omar to help her.
   a) reminded b) asked c) warned d) offered
8) " Put the gun down." The officer ....him to put the gun down .
   a) persuaded b) suggested c) ordered d) begged
9) We had a lot of..................at the party. I wish you had been with us .
   a) fun b) funny c) sun d) sunny
10) "Will you come to the ball ?" He .... her to go to the ball.
   a) ordered b) offered c) begged d) invited

11) " You should see a doctor." My brother ....me to see a doctor.
a) warned b) reminded c) advised d) told

12) As long as it is a family party, you don't have to wear........................ .
a) fashionable b) formally c) formal d) casual

13) It was possible for her to be a doctor if she did her best. This means she ....a doctor.
a) should be b) should have been
c) could have been d) couldn't have been

14) Some teachers are worried .... teenagers who always use text messaging language.
a) on b) for c) about d) at

15) It was wrong of you to sound the alarm repeatedly while driving. you..............................done that.
a) should have b) could have
c) must have d) shouldn't have

16) In the language of emails,.................... are preferred for being short.
a) frustration b) abbreviations
c) demonstrations d) dehydration

B. Reading Comprehension

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Helen Keller was an American writer who worked hard for handicapped people. She was a great example of a person who conquered physical handicaps . A serious illness destroyed her sight and hearing by the time she was about two years old. However , she was able to overcome her difficulties and become internationally famous. Through the sense touch, Ann Sullivan , who had been blind during childhood, could teach her reading and writing in Braille method. Gradually, the child was able to connect words with objects.

By the time she was sixteen, she could learn to speak. She went to a private secondary school and to college from which she graduated with honours. After college , she was interested in improving the conditions of the blind, the deaf and all the handicapped. She gave lectures and wrote many books and articles. She asked for funds from wealthy people.

During World War II, she helped the soldiers who had been blinded in the war. She always gave courage to the handicapped .

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Although she lost her sight and hearing , Helen ....
   a) could see , hear and speak when she was 18
   b) was shut off from the world
   c) asked for funds from wealthy people
   d) could overcome her disabilities and become famous
2. When Helen was sixteen years old, she ....
   a) could talk only with the sign language of the deaf mute
   b) gave lectures and wrote many books
   c) could learn to speak
   d) worked with soldiers blinded in the war
3. Being blind and deaf is some sort of ....handicap.
   a) physical b) mental
   c) logical d) virtual
4. Helen's handicap occurred during her ....
   a) womanhood b) childhood
   c) playhood d) knighthood
5. Which word in the passage is related to the eye?
   a) hearing b) sleeping
   c) smelling d) sight
6. The word " gradually " is the antonym of ....
   a) actually b) exactly
   c) suddenly d) quickly
7. Through her strong determination, Helen could .... her difficulties.
   a) get over b) overcome
   c) surrender d) both a & b
8. The word " funds " is similar in meaning to ....
   a) money b) cash
   c) capital d) all mentioned

C. Writing

3) Translation:

Translate into Arabic :

Speaking a foreign language enables to be in touch with people from other countries and know about their traditions.

....

....

Translate into English:

كان من المفترض أن أشارك في لقاء ثقافي عن أوجه التشابه والاختلاف بين اللغه الإنجليزيه واللغه العربية ولكني إعتذرت لإصابتي بالانفلونزا.

....

....

6) Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:-

" Public transportation"

....

Helpful Words

diagnosis	تشخيص	spread awareness	ينشر الوعى
handcrafts	الحرف البدوية	spoil	تفسد
master	يتقن	necessitates	تستلزم
special needs	الاحتياجات الشخصية	disabled	معاق
handicapped	المعوقين	literacy	معرفة القراءة والكتابة
due care	رعاية فائقة	physical Education	التربية البدنية (الرياضية)
ignore	يتجاهل	investment	إستثمار

Extra Words كلمات إضافية

medieval	العصور الوسطى	sculpture	فن النحت
manuscripts	مخطوطات	Egyptology	علم الآثار المصرية
inscriptions	نقوش	memorial	نصب تذكاري
dynasty	أسرة / سلالة	obelisk	مسلة
antiquities	قطع أثرية	excavation	حفر تنقيب
pre-historic	ماقبل التاريخ	era	عهد / عصر
minaret	مئذنة	seven wonders	العجائب السبعة



Series

In English

Answer Key   2022 : 2023

- إجابات كتاب الشرح
- إجابات كتاب المراجعة النهائية
- إجابات الامتحانات العامة
- إجابات الامتحانات العامة (الأزهر الشريف)



نسخة مجانية للسادة المدرسين فقط

" Answer key " 2nd Year Sec. 2022 /2023

Unit (1)

Exercises based on Vocabulary

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) learn / take up	2) immune to / protected against	3) very small / tiny	4) survive / live
5) casualty / hospital	6) feel breathless / can't breathe easily	7) getting / catching	8) does / performs

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1) infection	2) performed	3) reacted	4) severe
5) technique	6) boost	7) cells	8) safety
9) immune	10) organs	11) virus	12) emergency
13) bleeding	14) skill	15) sign	16) flat
17) injuries	18) breathing	19) instructions	20) Wrap
21) educate	22) pump	23) persuasive	24) expert
25) ticket	26) behave	27) pleasure	28) toys
29) muscles	30) bandage	31) perfect	32) champion
33) gloves	34) available	35) for	36) brain
37) chances	38) cloth	39) support	40) advertisements
41) brilliant	42) coughing	43) diet	44) reply
45) up	46) do	47) missed	48) normal
49) up	50) infection	51) shoulder	52) chest
53) cold	54) checked	55) around	56) describe
57) examination	58) microscope	59) responsibility	60) per

Writing

A) Translate into Arabic:

١- ربما يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية أن يعيش بعض الأطفال بالشوارع ويصبحوا بلا مأوى. إنها كارثه تحتاج أن تحل.
٢- لقد كان البروفسير مجدي يعقوب عضوا في الفريق الذي أجرى أول زراعة للقلب، هذا العمل كان إنجازا غير مسبوق.
٣- الآن أعمل لدى شركة مصرية مشهورة جدا، والتي تقوم الشركة بكتابة برامج الحاسوب الآلي لشركات هامة.
٤- على الرغم من تقاعده، لا يزال يعقوب يقوم بجهود من أجل الأطفال الذين لديهم مشاكل بالقلب، لإنقاذ أرواحهم.

B) Translate into English:

1. Mass media should spread health habits among citizens to avoid fatal infectious diseases such as coronavirus and bird flu.
2. Charities should contribute to providing medical care to heart patients', elderly people and the disabled and offering financial help to them.
3. You should hasten to contact emergency centers in cases of fires, road accidents or burglary acts so that the authorities can act.
4. Do you know that doing first aid in a proper way can save the lives of so many injured people and patients? But doing it requires good training .

Exercises based on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. needn't have arrived	2. must	3. must	4. needn't
5. have to	6. don't have to	7. had to	8. aren't allowed to
9. needn't have made	10. have to	11. mustn't	12. mustn't
13. mustn't	14. must	15. must	16. mustn't
17. will have to	18. mustn't	19. don't have to	20. needn't
21. have to	22. had to	23. needn't	24. don't need to
25. must	26. do I have	27. must	28. don't have to
29. didn't have to	30. did you have	31. have to	32. must

33. have to	34. don't have to	35. don't need to	36. mustn't
37. have to	38. must	39. don't need to	40. have to
41. need to	42. have to	43. mustn't	44. don't need to
45. have to	46. must	47. don't need to	48. need to
49. must	50. have to		

Exercises based on Act I Scene I

1. clown	2. soldier	3. duke	4. of
5. maps	6. into	7. forests	8. countryside
9. title	10. speech	11. cruel	12. power
13. foolish	14. choice	15. away	16. sword
17. terrible	18. safe	19. actions	20. play

Highly Distinguished تمارين للطلاب الفائقين

Comprehension :

1. c	2. b	3. c	4. d	5. d
6. c	7. d	8. c		

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. signs	2. exercise	3. power	4. situation	5. infection
6. severe	7. pressed	8. replies	9. performed	10. normal

A. Translate into Arabic:

١. يجب أن يكون لكل مواطن حق التمتع بالتأمين الطبي وهو مفيد جدا في حالة الحوادث أو الإصابات.

٢. ينبغي أن يدرب الطلاب على كيف يفكرون إبداعيا وكيف يتعاملون مع المشاكل وأن يجدوا حلولا عملية.

B. Translate into English:

1. Organ transplant operations have amazingly developed in the last ten years and spread in all the medical centers all over the world.

2. We should encourage our children to adopt healthy habits to avoid catching diseases by spreading medical awareness among them.

SB / WB & جمل وردت كتاب الطالب و الاعمال التحريرية

1. perform	2. infection	3. severe	4. technique
5. react	6. damaging	7. checking	8. about
9. must	10. must	11. mustn't	12. mustn't
13. mustn't	14. must	15. must	16. must
17. must	18. must	19. shouldn't	20. virus
21. weak	22. immune	23. enough	24. doing
25. in	26. don't have to	27. healthy	28. for
29. hand	30. down	31. for	32. has to
33. mustn't	34. don't have to	35. must	36. mustn't
37. have to	38. must	39. have to	40. have
41. must	42. mustn't	43. boost	44. organ
45. boost	46. cell	47. diet	48. have to
49. make	50. do	51. avoid	

D) Test (1) based on Unit One

1 . severe / great	2 . injury / cut	3. performing / doing	4 . perform / do
5. have to	6 . had to	7 . must	8 . to
9 . mustn't	10. perform	11. educate	12. have to
13. mustn't	14. off	15. cell	16. join

2) Comprehension

1. c	2. a	3. d	4. a
5. d	6. c	7. d	8. d

a. Translate into Arabic :

لكي تبقي صحيا، تحتاج أن تقوم ببعض التدريب البدني يوميا أما في المنزل أو في النادي لتكون نشيطا ولائقا .

b. Translate into English :

1) We owe a lot to doctors for exerting great efforts to treat patients catching Coronavirus and making people aware of the danger of the disease .

Unit (2)

Exercises based on Vocabulary

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1. get together / meet	2. traditional / conventional	3. alert / awake	4. scarce / rare
5. spicy / seasoned	6. look like / resemble	7. curious / interested	8. usual / normal
9. fry / brown	10. understand / grasp		

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. celebrate	2. occasions	3. gathers	4. eat out
5. cooked	6. desserts	7. getting	8. turkey
9. prepared	10. survived	11. traditional	12. together
13. serves	14. spoon	15. growing	16. place
17. fell	18. respect	19. vertical	20. light
21. followed	22. at	23. rules	24. share
25. mean	26. careful	27. make	28. make
29. tradition	30. cows	31. Soup	32. cold
33. belief	34. relatives	35. on	36. spices
37. popular	38. funny	39. what	40. expected
41. make	42. fish	43. grapes	44. smell
45. options	46. sounds	47. In	48. personally
49. start	50. extract	51. way	52. kept
53. decided	54. free	55. Foreigners	56. probably
57. bit	58. called	59. cooking	60. rest

Translate into Arabic :

١. على كل دول العالم أن يتعاونوا لمجابهة المشاكل الحالية وأن يجدوا حلول عاجلة لها .
٢. يتميز بعض الكتاب بأسلوب مميز في الكتابة لجذب الانتباه فهم لديهم قوة الابتكارية والابداع .
٣. إن تلوث الهواء هو المصدر الأولى لسرطان الرئة وأمراض الصدر والذي أصبح مشكلة خطيرة في المناطق الصناعية .
٤. إن الحياة في الريف حقا لمتعة لبعدها عن دخان المصانع ووسائل المواصلات المزدحمة .

Translate into English:

1. My friend wrote a long story about a child who had miserable childhood but he worked hard and set up a small workshop which later became a big factory .
2. We should stop throwing toxic waste of factories in the Nile as it is the artery of life in Egypt and the only source of drinking water and irrigating arable lands .
3. You can't drive a car without getting a driving licence or you'll be punished either by paying a fine or putting in prison .
4. Taking care of our surroundings and eliminating pollution is a global issue which we should solve, and this necessitates cooperation from all world countries and issuing global laws .

Exercises based on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. greater	2. of	3. higher	4. fewer
5. a bit	6. more spacious	7. older	8. healthier
9. better	10. rather	11. as interesting as	12. the most

13. as	14. of	15. more	16. deeply
17. more	18. the eldest	19. less	20. as much as
21. better	22. earlier	23. far	24. quicker
25. much	26. early	27. a two-wheel bicycle	28. the least
29. as tall as	30. muddier		31. ever
32. earlier	33. gentler	34. less	35. ever
36. cheapest	37. most frightening	38. least expensive	39. more nervous than
40. most challenging	41. easiest	42. fastest	43. a bit taller
44. least	45. the deepest	46. good	
47. the most	48. most popular	49. extremely	50. happier

Exercises based on the story

1. lie	2. deserves	3. deceived	4. trust
5. inheritance	6. sent	7. loyalty	8. exited
9. sword	10. income	11. angry	12. truth
13. succeeded	14. broken	15. care	16. fool
17. cruel	18. actions	19. deserve	20. serious

General Exercises Highly Distinguished

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. more	2. cheapest	3. From	4. least	5. less
6. name	7. at a time	8. a five-page article	9. salty	10. traditional

Comprehension

1. a	2. b	3. b	4. a	5. b
6. b	7. d	8. c		

A) Translate into Arabic :

١. تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهودها لزيادة إنتاج الأرض الزراعية بزيادة خصوبة التربة والقضاء على الآفات وأمراض النبات .
٢. إن الحكومة والأفراد مسئولين عن حماية التراث القومي الذي يظهر عظمة حضارتنا .

B) Translate into English :

1. There are many calls from experts all over the world which aim at keeping the environment and conferences are now being held under the umbrella of the United Nations to achieve this goal (target) .
2. We should rationalize food, electricity and water consumption to face the soaring prices from time to time .

Exercises from the students' books & the workbooks

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. amount	2. celebrate	3. out	4. together
5. occasion	6. prepare	7. served	8. traditional
9. the most	10. the best	11. cheaper	12. sweeter
13. inheritance	14. trust	15. loyalty	16. deceive 17 .exit

D) Test (2) based on Unit Two

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. spicy / seasoned	2. prepared / made	3. event / occurrence	4. suckled / fed
5. healthy	6.after	7. the least	8. a two-wheel bicycle
9. fatter	10. as	11. together	12. the earliest
13. celebrating	14. richer	15. hotter	16. respect

Comprehension

1. b	2. a	3. c	4. d
5. c	6. b	7. c	8. a

a) Translate into Arabic :

سوف يسبب الاحتباس الحراري ذوبان الجليد في بعض المناطق وارتفاع منسوب المياه وذلك يؤدي إلى فيضانات وتشريد الناس من منازلهم .

1) Our country is rich in natural resources which if they are fully used, this will lead to welfare and remarkable progress, and in turn improves people's income .

Unit (3)

Exercises based on Vocabulary

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1. planted / grown	2. involve / include	3. diversity / variety	4. wet / damp
5. run / manage	6. decade /decennary	7. meatless / vegetarian	8. keeping / raising
9. improve / enhance	10. original / prototype		

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. agriculture	2. crop	3. earth	4. innovation
5. livestock	6. production	7. source	8. sustainable
9. variety	10. cover	11. space	12. wet
13. vehicle	14. negative	15. burgers	16. tell
17. to	18. chemicals	19. rises	20. with
21. done	22. taste	23. energy	24. climate
25. rainforests	26. popular	27. hour's time	28. against
29. sense	30. giant	31. focuses	32. available
33. land	34. decade	35. make	36. Algae
37. in	38. chance	39. heated	40. efficiently
41. make	42. petrol	43. continent	44. extraordinary
45. enclose	46. controls	47. traditional	48. soil
49. enough	50. open	51. Hydroponics	52. create
53. involves	54. remove	55. whale	56. robots
57. gap	58. laboratory	59. argument	60. surface

Translate into Arabic :

١- لقد أخبرنا المصنعون دائما أن منتجاتهم ذات جودة عالية، وهدفهم النهائي هو أن يجنوا أرباحا كبيرة .
٢- لقد أصبح التعليم أكثر وأكثر أهمية، يجب على الناس أن يستمروا في تعلم مهارات جديدة على مدى حياتهم.
٣- لقد بذلت جهود كبيرة نحو تحقيق المساواة بين الرجال والنساء، فلقد قدم للنساء نفس الوظائف وحصلوا على أجر مساوي لعمل مساوي .
٤- في هذه الأيام ربما يتسبب زراعة كل شيء باستخدام الأسمدة الكيماوية في مخاطر على المستهلكين للفواكه والخضروات والأشياء الأخرى التي يتم زراعتها .

Translate into English :

1) We should make sure that the food we have is safe, healthy and fresh to avoid catching diseases especially those related to the stomach .
2) A lot of people catch diseases because of drinking polluted water, full of poisoned waste caused by industrialization .
3) Building sports clubs helps the youth to practise sports and protect them from deviation or delinquency and adopting negative thoughts .
4) Increasing production is a national duty to face the over-population problem and unemployment in Egypt and improve the Egyptian citizen's living level .

Exercises based on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. 's going to rain	2. 'll	3. will you be	4. am meeting
5. does	6. is going to	7. will be decorating	8. will be reading
9. will be done	10. will stop	11. will you be doing	12. will be doing

13. starts	14. are going	15. will	16. am going
17. are you going to	18. will be built	19. will be living	20. 'll
21. will fall	22. isn't going to	23. are having	24. is going to be
25. 'll close	26. leaves	27. 'm flying	28. Are you doing
29. will be	30. am doing	31. will be eating	32. will carry
33. will be doing	34. will buy	35. will watch	36. finishes
37. leaves	38. will be walking	39. is going to be	40. will be

Exercises based on Act I Scene III & IV

1. behaved	2. hitting	3. servants	4. soldiers
5. foolish	6. disguised	7. followed	8. honest
9. noticed	10. encourage	11. carts	12. guilty
13. attendants	14. attacked	15. with	16. noisy
17. solve	18. let	19. medicine	20. immediately
21. whose	22. what		

Highly Distinguished تمارين للطلاب الفائقين

1. petrol	2. guilty	3. efficient	4. crop	5. earth
6. growing	7. rising	8. climate	9. negative	10. up

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. a	2. a	3. b	4. d
5. d	6. c	7. b	8. c

3) A) Translate into Arabic :

١. ينبغي أن تشتمل الملصقات الموضوعة على المنتجات كل المعلومات، فهي تساعد المستهلكين أن يعرفوا بالضبط ما يشترونه .

٢. يعد التلوث واحدا من أسوأ المخاطر التي تهدد حياتنا على الأرض، ينبغي أن نقضي عليه بكل الوسائل .

B) Translate into English:

1) The River Nile is the secret of life for Egypt for several centuries, so we should protect it from pollution and rationalize our water consumption for irrigation or home use .
2) It is necessary to protect the Nile water and the underground water from pollution to avoid the diseases caused by polluting the environment around us .

Exercises from the students' books & the workbooks

1. will be	2. will be	3. will be travelling	4. will still be using
5. will be eating	6. am going to start	7. will serve	8. is going to begin
9. will be relaxing	10. will win	11. will be eating	12. agriculture
13. sustainable	14. livestock	15. crop	16. production
17. innovation	18. variety	19. will be working	20. isn't going to stop
21. will have	22. will drive	23. will be	

Exam (3) based on Unit Three

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1. containing / holding	2. answer / solution	3. cattle / livestock	4. negative / harmful

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

5. will come	6. am going to move	7. hydroponics	8. will be reclaiming
9. insects	10. of	11. will buy	12. will be having
13. energy	14. am visiting	15. will go	16. rises

Comprehension

1. d	2. c	3. c	4. a
5. b	6. c	7. d	8. a

a) Translate into Arabic :

إذا أمكن زراعة المحاصيل في المياه بدلا من التربة سيكون ذلك حلا عمليا لمشكلة المجاعة.

b) Translate into English :-

Using the modern methods in agriculture instead of the traditional ones is the only way to improve the crops quality .

D) Exam (4) based on Unit 1, 2 & 3

1) Choose the TWO correct answers :

1. boost / strengthen	2. variety / diversity	3. regionally / locally	4. clearly / obviously

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. boost	2. variety	3. will be taking	4. don't have to
5. is doing	6. locally	7. clearly	8. place
9. the hottest	10. heavy	11. prepares	12. celebrate
13. calling	14. more expensive	15. mustn't	16. sword

Comprehension

1. c	2. d	3. d	4. c
5. d	6. b	7. d	8. c

3) Translation

a) Translate into English :-

1) It is necessary to protect the Nile and the underground water from pollution because water has become more precious than oil, especially most countries suffer from water scarcity .

b) Translate into Arabic :

تعتبر ممارسة الرياضات طريقة عملية لمساعدة الشباب أن يبتعدوا عن العادات السيئة،و ينبغي أن يشاركوا في أي رياضة للمحافظة علي لياقتهم.

D) Exam (5) based on Unit 1, 2 & 3

1) Choose the TWO correct answers :

1. go up / rise	2. crop / yield	3. performance / play	4. serious/dangerous

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. on	2. will be visiting	3. rise	4. crop
5. will go	6. must	7. power	8. play
9. am going to	10. will carry	11. serious	12. deserves
13. most	14. salty	15. have to	16. give

Comprehension

1. b	2. a	3. b	4. d
5. c	6. d	7. b	8. a

a) Translate into English :-

Don't leave food uncovered so as not to become a source of infection by harmful germs which infectious diseases from one place to another .

b) Translate into Arabic :

لا تأكل الطعام بعد انتهاء تاريخ الصلاحية لتبقى صحيا ولذا ينبغي أن يتم قراءة الملصقات بدقة .

Unit (4)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1-formally/ officially	2-staying / keeping	3- worried / upset	4.tone / Voice expression
5- image / picture	6- basic / fundamental	7- damages / ruins	8- grasp / understand
9- popular / common	10- innovator / creator		

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. text	2. reader	3. abbreviation	4. linguist
5. formal	6. from	7. innovator	8. teenagers
9. Emojis	10. damages	11. require	12. punctuation
13. argue	14. keep	15. upset	16. for
17. response	18. short	19. tone	20. created
21. Prefixes	22. difficult	23. made	24. communicate
25. confusing	26. blog	27. uncomfortable	28. post
29. positive	30. recognisable	31. similar	32. organise
33. make	34. suffix	35. misunderstand	36. worried
37. procedures	38. powerful	39. soon	40. gr8
41. introduced	42. basic	43. no longer	44. spelling
45. massage	46. sounds	47. describe	48. later
49. recorded	50. adding	51. communication	52. into
53. language	54. space	55. correctly	56. text
57. included	58. posting	59. tips	60. contracted

A) Translate into Arabic :

١- على المرء أن يعمل بجد لتحقيق آماله للاستمتاع بحياته قبل الكبر وبدون عمل ذلك سيندم على ذلك .
٢- لقد أخذت الحكومة المصرية بعض الخطوات لتطوير التعليم لمسايرة المستويات العالية .
٣- ينبغي أن يتعلم الانسان الناجح أن يتكيف مع المواقف المختلفة لتحقيق الهدف المرجو ومثل هذه الانجازات تصبح فريدة خلال حياته المهنية .
٤- إن بناء مواطنين صالحين وخلق مجتمع منتج من الآهداف الرئيسية للتعليم فهذا يعلمهم الاعتماد على النفس .

B. Translate into English :

1) Handcrafts are the key to success for lots of young people nowadays and it's better for one to master them at a very early age .
2) Interest and care should be directed to those of special needs to enjoy their life and feel the sympathy and support of the society .
3) To enjoy your life, you have to get over your fears which spoil your enjoyment and this necessitates a lot of wisdom and courage .
4) We should encourage children to practise activities which make them gain useful experience and help them to spend their spare time usefully (fruitfully)

Exercises based on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. told	2. asked	3. shouldn't have	4. could
5. advised	6. encouraged	7. warned	8. shouldn't have
9. could have taken	10. reminded	11. advised	12. could have
13. should have	14. should have	15. shouldn't have done	16. asked
17. told	18. not to	19. suggested	20. warned
21. told	22. to	23. begged	24. reminded
25. advised	26. ordered	27. asked	28. should have done
29. should have	30. should have done	31. should have	32. should have
33. ought to have studied	34. asked	35. should have	36. to
37. warned	38. advised	39. offered	40. should have

Exercises based on Act II, Scene I

1. called	2. plotting	3. ports	4. guard
5. persuade	6. reward	7. stab	8. profit
9. follow	10. broken	11. beggar	12. faithful

13. pretend	14. disbelief	15. makes	16. got
17. causes	18. cheat	19. fool	20. sword

General Exercises

1. could	2. offered	3. innovators	4. did	5. spelling
6. linguists	7. could	8. should have	9. should have told	10. message

Comprehension

1. c	2. a	3. no	4. b
5. a	6. b	7. c	8. d

A) Translate into Arabic :

١. إن التعليم إستثمار في مستقبل البلد وينبغي أن نولي إهتماما كبيرا به للحصول على أقصى فائدة منه .
٢. ما يفشل المدرسين في تعليمه داخل الفصول يمكن تعليمه في الملاعب لذا ينبغي أن لا نتجاهل التربية البدنية.

B) Translate into English :

1) I advise you to consult the doctor if you feel tired or fever to be able to diagnose the disease and exact the proper treatment .
2) Public libraries should be provided with books to spread culture among all citizens and awareness among different classes .
3) Tourism is a means of showing modern and ancient civilisation of the nation through sightseeing historic places by tourists .
4) Students with special needs are in need of experienced teachers who can deal with them properly or rightly .

Exercises from the students' books & the workbooks

1. tone	2. misunderstand	3. necessarily	4. frown
5. shouldn't have	6. couldn't have	7. could have	8. should have
9. shouldn't have	10. could have	11. formal	12. innovator
13. abbreviation	14. should have	15. shouldn't have shouted	16. could have caught
17. couldn't have	18. should have	19. could have been	

D) Exam (6) based on Unit Four

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1. removed / displaced	2. embarrassing / confusing	3. innovate / create	4. communicating / imparting

2) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5. could have	6. should have	7. asked	8. ordered
9. fun	10. invited	11. advised	12. formally
13. could have been	14. about	15. shouldn't have	16. abbreviations

Comprehension

1. d	2. c	3. a	4. b
5. d	6. c	7. d	8. d

إن تحدث اللغة الانجليزية يمكن الشخص أن يكون على اتصال بأناس من دول أخرى ومعرفة الكثير عن تقاليدهم .

b) Translate into English :-

1) I was supposed to take part in cultural meeting about the similarities and differences between Arabic and English language but I apologised for catching flu .

Unit (5)

Exercises based on Vocabulary

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1. accurate / reliable	2. keep / store	3. website / homepage	4. pictures / images
5. own / possess	6. hobbies / interests	7. addicted / obsessed	8. updating / modernizing
9. fired / sacked	10. put up / fixed		

2) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. smart	2. later	3. consult	4. reliable
5. updated	6. effectively	7. up-to-date	8. designed
9. save	10. website	11. researching	12. download
13. up	14. upload	15. upgrade	16. confused
17. sponsored	18. cookies	19. banner	20. advertisers
21. search	22. do	23. online	24. exactly
25. smart phone	26. targeted	27. doing	28. behaviour
29. sensible	30. symbol	31. with	32. giving
33. profile	34. effects	35. mainly	36. support
37. made	38. similar	39. set	40. presents
41. limit	42. create	43. to	44. personal
45. situation	46. make	47. stamped	48. password
49. excuses	50. to	51. instant	52. professional
53. publish	54. false	55. about	56. share
57. pay	58. clear	59. badly	60. button

A. Translate into Arabic :

١- إعتاد العلماء في الماضي أن يقوموا بالتجارب على الحيوانات بدلا من الانسان. إن حياة الانسان أغلى من حياة الحيوان .
٢- في هذه الأيام يفضل مزيدا من الناس أن يتواصلوا إجتماعيا عبر الانترنت بدلا من اللقاء وجها لوجه.
٣- ترحب شركات التلفاز دائما بالتعليقات من مشاهديهم، وهذا يسمى بالنقد البناء .
٤- يخلق اليانصيب القومي مليونيرا كل أسبوع في بريطانيا، يمكن أن يستيقظ الفرد ومعه مزيدا من المال أكثر مما يتخيل .

B. Translate into English :

1) I feel sad and pity on seeing animals caged, they want to get free from this prison and live normally .
2) The ability to use the computer has become one of the basic conditions to get a good job and this has driven most graduates to join courses to learn the skills of using it.
3) It is wrong for the motorist to use the mobile phone while driving because it distracts him and this leads to dangerous accidents and harm himself and others .
4) To be promoted in your job, you should pass some training courses prepared by specialists to make sure that the person has enough experience to do his duties .

Exercises based on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. to	2. supposed	3. meant	4. seem
5. meant	6. supposed	7. is meant	8. mean
9. seem	10. are meant	11. was supposed to	12. meant
13. seem	14. Were	15. seem	16. is supposed
17. suppose	18. seems	19. were meant	20. is meant
21. was supposed	22. seems	23. Was	24. never meant
25. were not supposed	26. seems	27. was meant	28. is supposed
29. seem	30. were supposed	31. is meant	32. seems
33. is supposed	34. seems	35. is meant	36. are supposed
37. are meant	38. seems	39. was supposed to	40. seems

Exercises based on Act III Scene I

1. terrible	2. cave	3. hide	4. joke
5. hat	6. spy	7. kingdom	8. ring
9. lock	10. apologize	11. made	12. cruel
13. with	14. held	15. choice	16. set
17. double	18. shelter	19. patience	20. blowing

" Answer key " 2nd Year Sec. 2022 /2023

General Exercises Highly Distinguished

1. adapted	2. meaning	3. lock	4. effective	5. mountain
6. pros	7. cruel	8. contact	9. care	10. surprisingly

Comprehension

1. a	2. c	3. b	4. a
5. d	6. d	7. d	8. a

A) Translate into Arabic :

١. لقد كان دانيال ديفو مؤلفا إنجليزيا هاما والذي يعتبره الكثير واحدا من مؤسسي الرواية الانجليزية.
٢. تقدم طاقة الرياح حلا لجميع مشاكل الطاقة لكونها متجددة، نظيفة وآمنة كمصدر للطاقة.

B) Translate into English :-

1) The underground system in the Greater Cairo has caused traffic flow even during the rush hour, so it has become a comfortable, fast and safe means .
2) Advertisers design interesting advertisements to attract the greatest number of customers to buy their goods and choose famous figures for these advertisements.

Exercises from the Students' books & the workbooks

1) Downloading	2) updating	3) upgrading	4) upload
5) Taking down	6) to cook	7) wasn't	8) to be
9) to call	10) to have	11) to leave	12) seemed
13) to be	14) are	15) profile	16) Behaviour
17) birth	18) behaviour	19) sensible	20) follower
21) post	22) post	23) views	24) subscribe
25) give	26) about	27) access	28) publish
29) behavoiur	30) profile	31) year of birth	32) sensible / 33) symbols

Test (6) based on unit Five

Choose the Two correct answers :

1. Advertisers / promoters	2. reliable / trusted	3. ask / consult	4. recognize / know

5. to be	6. uploading	7. are	8. are meant
9. survey	10. to give	11. mean	12. confused
13. seemed	14. excuse	15. mean	16. followers

Comprehension

1. d	2. a	3. b	4. d
5. b	6. c	7. c	8. b

A) Translate into Arabic :

تعد القواعد و التعليمات هامة لأنها تساعد الناس أن يعملوا معا وأن يتعاونوا، ينبغي أن نكون متآلفين مع تلك القواعد .

B) Translate into English :

1) Tolerance with others leads to cooperation and love with individuals and success at work and these are the most important qualities of success and progress of any society.

Unit (6)

Choose the Two correct answers :

1. gift / present	2. ignored / paid no attention	3. arguing / fighting	4. mean / miserly
5. published / issued	6. managers / employers	7. phone / call	8. contact / touch
9. apparently / seemingly	10. memory / recollection		

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

1. gift	2. lonely	3. sighed	4. mean
5. begging	6. treated	7. about	8. terrible
9. minds	10. carols	11. piles	12. fall out

13. about	14. hang	15. warm	16. tone
17. poor	18. a bit	19. for	20. lost
21. argue	22. back	23. smile	24. out of
25. changed	26. invited	27. fired	28. far
29. for	30. unfriendly	31. shouted	32. attention
33. miss	34. pocket	35. up	36. getting
37. ignored	38. in	39. upset	40. friendship
41. Honestly	42. bad	43. eyes	44. uncomfortably
45. thinking	46. studies	47. better	48. react
49. foggy	50. poor	51. regrets	52. in
53. into	54. unusual	55. chatting	56. media
57. dinner	58. Christmas	59. fire	60. let

A. Translate into Arabic:

١. قد يكون سبب التوتر المنافسة على الوظائف، عدم مصداقية المستقبل وعوامل أخرى لذا يجب تجنب المواقف المثيرة للتوتر .
٢. تخص الحاسبات الآلية الناس فهم يستمعون باستخدامهم على الرغم من أنهم ليسوا هواة كمبيوتر .
٣. يحب الناس المغامرات لتغيير الروتين اليومي. إنه من السأم أن تفعل نفس الشيء كل يوم .
٤. يعتقد بعض الناس أنه ينبغي على الآباء تعليم أطفالهم كيف يكونوا أعضاء نافعين للمجتمع وآخرون يقولوا أن المدرسة أفضل .

1. It's one's right to have prospects but they should be legal, so everyone should try hard bearing in mind others' rights .
2. Man may expose himself to certain death while trying to reach a high mountain because this matter requires great physical effort to reach this summit.
3. A successful person is the one who decides on his goals from the start and tries to achieve them and never feels frustrated when faced with difficulties.
4. One acquires experience through performing tasks which he should do and school programmes in which he takes part in addition to listening to his elders' advice .

Exercises based on Grammar

1. make	2. wouldn't have noticed	3. stop	4. don't stay
5. will	6. if	7. rains	8. expand
9. are leaving	10. will	11. unless	12. hadn't been
13. unless	14. caught	15. wash	16. turns
17. were	18. don't	19. will go	20. had run out
21. As long as	22. provided that	23. would have been	24. unless
25. doesn't mind	26. were held	27. in case	28. have
29. have	30. will taste	31. join	32. will
33. write	34. would have	35. will	36. had
37. had gone	38. won't	39. work	40. have answered
41. would have finished	42. don't run	43. had asked	44. 'll get
45. would watch	46. helps	47. have	48. will
49. would	50. feels		

Exercises based on Act III

1. lightning	2. torch	3. forgive
4. hard-hearted	5. philosopher	6. straw
7. hut	8. forgive	9. cruel
10. mad	11. shoes	12. force
13. Thunder	14. cutting	15. majesty
16. out	17. terrible	18. shelter
19. wise	20. homeless	

" Answer key " 2nd Year Sec. 2022 /2023

General Exercises Highly Distinguished

1. probably	2. make	3. if	4. at	5. wouldn't have been
6. out	7. had said	8. regretted	9. had left	10. media

Comprehension

1. d	2. a	3. b	4. c
5. c	6. c	7. d	8. b

١. إن القول المأثور بعدم الاستسلام ابدا يعبر عن مبدأ هام في معظم الحالات يدين النجاح بدرجة كبيرة للإصرار عن الموهبة.
٢. بما أننا نعيش في عصر التكنولوجيا فأن كل شيء يبدو ممكنا والتقدم في عصرنا الحالي يعتمد على الحاسبات الآلية التي بدونها يصبح التقدم مستحيل .

1) Practising sport helps us to spend our spare time usefully and this helps to build strong bodies, able to resist diseases.
2) It is said that education has no age, so it should begin at an early age and lasts during man's career and even after his retirement from work .

Exercises from the students' books & the workbooks

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1. sigh	2. mean	3. beg	4. pile
5. fire	6. mean	7. fire	8. mean
9. had bought	10. would have watched	11. had read	12. wouldn't have been
13. would	14. mean	15. piles	
16. sigh	17. beg		18. die
19. would buy	20. misses	21. fall	22. wouldn't have made
23. had cared	24. would have got	25. had invited	26. get on with
27. hang out with	28. brings back	29. keep in touch with	30. fell out with

Test (8) based on unit six

Choose the Two correct answers :

1. regretted / felt sorry about	2. gifts / presents	3. solo / alone	4. heap / pile

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5. Christmas	6. falling out	7. die	8. was playing
9. would have gone	10. back	11. mind	12. in case of
13. had started	14. hanging	15. will	16. in case

Comprehension

1. d	2. c	3. b	4. c
5. d	6. b	7. d	8. d

A) Translate into Arabic :

من الغريب لمتسلقي الجبال أن يتسلقوا الجبال على الرغم من خطورتها فهم لديهم هوس لتحقيق طموحاتهم .

B) Translate into English :

1) The computer plays a big role in learning process according to recent educational systems as it is the basis of distance learning.

Test (9) based on units (4 & 5 & 6)

Choose the Two correct answers :

1. sensitive / sensible	2. sign / symbol	3. appeared / seeme	4. sponsors / patrons

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5. messaging	6. wasn't supposed	7. is meant	8. should have arrived
9. had studied	10. profile	11. would get	12. jokes
13. unless	14. innovator	15. could	16. tone

Comprehension

1. a	2. c	3. b	4. c
5. d	6. b	7. c	8. d

A) Translate into Arabic :

ان السفر للخارج يساعدنا في رؤية بلاد عديدة في العالم و نكون علي اتصال بعادات وتقاليد الأمم الأخرى .

B) Translate into English :

Using websites and social media wrongly is a waste of time and effort and destroys health.

Test (10) based on units (4 & 5 & 6)

Choose the Two correct answers :

1. sack / fire	2. terrible / awful	3. reply / response	4. speed up / accelerate

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5. change	6. is supposed to	7. to be having
8. would you have done	9. falling out	10. should have
11. advised	12. misunderstand	13. In case of
14. seems	15. ruin	16. are fixed

Comprehension

1. d	2. a	3. b	4. c
5. d	6. b	7. b	8. d

A) Translate into Arabic :

تنفيذ الحكومة مشروعات قومية ضخمة مثل مشروع العاصمة الادارية الجديدة و مصانع الطاقة و استصلاح الصحراء.

B) Translate into English :

The progress of all countries relies on education , so the government should do their best to develop it for a better life for the coming generations.

إجابات كتاب المراجعة النهائية

Answer Key 2022 : 2023

للصف الثاني الثانوي

كتاب المراجعة النهائية

Unit (1)

Exercises based on Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) perform / do	2) disease / infection	3) harm / injury	4) usual / normal
5) duty / responsibility	6) condition / health	7) joined / got into	8) persuaded/ convinced
9) enhance / boost	10) champion / hero		

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

11) reacted	12) severe	13) must be	14) must
15) have to	16) mustn't	17) had to	18) emergency
19) mustn't	20) needn't	21) fingers	22) reply
23) mustn't	24) had to	25) flat	26) educating

27) about	28) mustn't	29) had to	30) needn't
31) mustn't	32) must	33) mustn't	34) wrap
35) protect	36) of	37) reason	38) have to
39) don't have to	40) have got to	41) must	42) mustn't
43) talking	44) organ	45) cell	46) mustn't
47) must be	48) must	49) virus	50) immune

A) Translate into Arabic:

١- يُعد التوتر شئ سيء للصحة البدنية و العقلية ، لقد اصبح من الضروري ان نتمتع براحة البال في جميع الاوقات.
٢- تمتلك الحكومة الواجب الرئسي لاي نظام اقتصادي لحماية او دعم الامان و الصحة العامة
٣- لقد لوثت المصانع التربة والممرات المائية بالكيماويات السامة التي تضر بالصحة ويتم عمل توصيات لتقليل التلوث بقدر الإمكان
٤-يعتبر النظافة الشخصية مفهوم يرتبط النظافة والصحة العامة والطب وهو يهتم اساسا بتقليل الآثار الصحية السلبية
٥- تعتبر الحكومة مسؤولة عن تحسين الخدمات العامة مثل الطرق والمواصلات والمياه والطاقة والصحه والتعليم.

B) Translate into English:

1. Coronavirus is a serious disease because infection passes quickly from one patient to another, scientists are still exerting great efforts to discover a vaccine for it.
2. To improve the person's immune system he has to have fresh healthy foods and have enough sleep.
3. All the body organs work together and the brain gives instructions continually and this enables each organ to do its functions well.

4-The ambulance carried the accident victims to the nearest hospital and the emergency doctors did all the necessary first aids.

5-The driver mustn't take any alcoholic drinks while driving as this makes his reaction slow and unsuitable during emergencies.

Test (1) based on Unit One

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) infection / affliction	2) behaved / reacted	3) great / severe	4) expansion / boost

2) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

5) went	6) cells	7) don't have to	8) mustn't
9) have to	10) needn't	11) injured	12) mustn't
13) needn't have bought	14) immune	15) mustn't	16) virus
17) c	18) b	19) b	20) d
21) c	22) c	23) d	24) a

a. Translate into Arabic :

بدون الاختبارات على الفئران سوف لا يكون لدينا الكثير من الأدوية التي يمكن أن نستعملها هذه الأيام بأمان.

Be tolerant with the others and don't forget that you have your own mistakes and disadvantages which you should do your best to avoid.

Unit (2)

Exercises based on Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) celebrated / commemorated	2) get ready / prepare	3) serves / provides	4) sugary / sweet
5) live / survive	6) Spicy / Hot	7) snack / meal	8) shell / oyster
9) impolite / rude	10) deceived / tricked		

2) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

11) amount	12) out	13) traditional	14) delicious
15) laugh	16) place	17) feed	18) Snow
	19) much more expensive	20) as good as	21) successfully

22) the best	23) longer than	24) the least	25) extremely	
26) menu	27) good	28) many	29) slowest	
30) sea food	31) more interested	32) many	33) dishes	
34) questionnaire	35) longer	36) the least expensive	37) the furthest	
38) attractive	39) better	40) relative	41) more useful	
42) chopsticks	43) easy	44) the most popular	45) light	
46) the fatter	47) opinion	48) as	49) quicker	50) colder

A) Translate into Arabic:

١ - تؤثر نوعية الطعام الذي نتناوله على الصحة لحد كبير ،كلما اكلنا طعام نباتياً اكثر ،كلما استمتعنا بالراحة من داخلنا.

٢- هل لا تستطيع التقنيات الحديثة أن تمدنا بالطعام والملبس والمأوي والمواد السلعية الكافية لجميع شعوب العالم إذا استخدمت بشكل سيء؟

٣- يعتبر الطعام الرخيص ، مستوى مرتفع في المعيشة واجوراً أعلى وظروف عمل أفضل و مزيدا من فرص العمل هي الاهداف الرئيسية الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم .

٤- نعيش الآن في عالم شاسع من الأفكار و الاختراعات الجديدة ولكن إذا قام كل واحد باقل ما يستطيع يا له من عالم مختلف سوف يكون!

٥- يحتاج الناس إلى السلام ،الحكمة، الحب ،التعاون والإخلاص والاحترام ليحققوا عالما جميلا سلميا مزدهراً تسعى له البشرية.

1-The Egyptians often celebrate Sham el Nassim at the beginning of spring every year and the Egyptian families go to open places and fields to spend the day there.

2-All peoples have popular and traditional dishes which most individuals have for many reasons, they may be cheap or delicious.

3-Doctors advise their patients to have light meals especially at night, they should be fat and sugar-free.

4-Children and elderly people are interested in watching funny films and they might spend long periods in front of TV screen watching these films.

5-Family members and relatives often gather on happy occasions like wedding and also on sad ones like deaths and this is a tradition existed in most societies.

Test (2) based on Unit Two

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) traditional / classic	2) assist / serve	3) lightly cooked / rare	4) sweet / sugary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) of	6) celebrated	7) earlier	8) as
9) further	10) out	11) I am	12) Preparing
13) more	14) faster	15) better	16) oysters

Reading Comprehension

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

17- d 18- c 19- c 20- d
21- a 22 - b 23- b 24 - c

a. Translate into Arabic :

تلعب الرياضة دورا حيويا في تشكيل شخصية الفرد فهي تعلمه كيف يكون شخص مستقل واثق من نفسه.

b. Translate into English :

Patience, cooperation and tolerance are the most important qualities which help to succeed and face all the difficulties which hinder the person from achieving his goals.

Unit (3)

Exercises based on Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) variety / diversity	2) cattle / livestock	3) less harmful / sustainable	4) agriculture / farming
5) variation / difference	6) causing / creating	7) dry / arid	8) soil / clay

9) chance / possibility	10) production / yield

11) will cancel	12) crops	13) will be running	14) will have to
15) will be	16) arrives	17) innovation	18) are going to take
19) will be	20) climate	21) am going to look	22) are taking
23) on	24) won't forget	25) rising	26) rainforest
27) is going to snow	28) will be building	29) argument	30) will have
31) in	32) both a & c	33) popular	34) is going to be
35) damage	36) will be visiting	37) 'll have	38) 're going to break
39) available	40) robot	41) are holding	42) efficiently
43) is going to	44) evidence	45) will be taking	46) surface
47) will be	48) continent	49) decade	50) is going to make

Translate into Arabic :

١ - يؤثر تغير المناخ وارتفاع معدلات ثاني أكسيد الكربون على الزراعة والنظم البيئية ، ينبغي أن يكون هناك حلولا عملية لمشكلة تلوث البيئة.

٢ - يعد الادعاء بأن الزراعة الصناعية هي الطريق الوحيد لإطعام الكثير من السكان غير مقبول من النباتيين الذين يؤمنون بالزراعة العضوية.

٣ -منذ وقت طويل مضي كان المصريين مشغولين بالزراعة وصناعة الفخار والزجاج والنسيج وبناء السفن وتربية الأغنام والماشية والتجارة على جميع أشكالها.

٤-لا يزال العديد من العلماء يحذرون الناس من آثار استخدام الأسمدة الكيماوية في الزراعة و لحسن الحظ يعد التقدم في الزراعة العضوية اختياراً صحياً واعداً.

٥ - يوجد هناك اتجاه لتشجيع المؤسسات الخاصة التي تعمل للإرتقاء بالزراعة العضوية وصديقه للبيئة في مصر

Translate into English :

1- Agriculture (Farming) is the main source of food in the world, but it should be improved with the most modern technological equipment.

2-The world tends to encourage all the friendly environment products to reduce the rate of environmental pollution which threatens life on the earth.

3- Scientists do great efforts for the sake of creativity in all aspects of life such as agriculture, industry, education and medicine.

4- Scientists have the evidence that fatal diseases such as cancer and the stomach diseases are caused by using chemical fertilizers in growing vegetables and fruits.

5- Some scientists think that because of the lack of food in many of the world countries, man can eat some plants like Algae or some insects.

Exam (3) based on Unit Three

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) livestock / cattle	2) diversity / variety	3) indulge / involve	4) ruin / damage

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) 'll be visiting	6) chemicals	7) won't	8) innovation
9) are going to	10) 'll be sleeping	11) am going to	12) 'll finish
13) is flying	14) popular	15) breathe	16) 'll explain
17) c	18) b	19) d	20) d
21) d	22) c	23) b	24) b

a) Translate into Arabic :

ينبغي أن تتضمن الملصقات على المنتجات معلومات تفصيلية لأن هذا يساعد الزبون أن يعرف بالضبط ما الذي يشتريه

Team sports teach us good qualities such as cooperation and tolerance especially when you play with people of your own age.

Exam (4) based on Unit 1, 2 & 3

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) environmentally / ecologically	2) damage / harm	3) become / fall	4) boost / enhance

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) mustn't	6) 'll be	7) sweet	8) will be lying
9) doesn't have to	10) than	11) go on	12) needn't
13) more	14) the most	15) celebrated	16) needn't have done

Reading Comprehension

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

17) c	18) b	19) c	20) b
21) d	22) c	23) d	24) d

a) Translate into Arabic :

انه لمن المهم أن نشجع المراهقين على أن يتحملوا مسؤولية تصرفاتهم فهم اجيال المستقبل للأمم.

b) Translate into English :-

Water is the source of life, don't pollute the environment by dumping rubbish into it.

Exam (5) based on Unit 1, 2 & 3

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) evidence / proof	2) quantity / amount	3) feeds / provides	4) injury / damage

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) needn't	6) well-done	7) healthy	8) should
9) are allowed to	10) make	11) should	12) will be flying
13) the most	14) colder	15) Salty	16) thinner
17) a	18) b	19) d	20) c
21) d	22) b	23) d	24) a

a) Translate into Arabic :

هل تعرف إلى أي مدى خطورة التوتر حيث انه يؤثر علينا جسدياً وعقلياً ولذلك ينبغي ان نتجنب المواقف الموترة.

b) Translate into English :-

Scientists are now doing new research to discover new ways to treat fatal diseases such as cancer and AIDS.

Unit (4)

Exercises based on Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) formal / official	2) emoji / symbol	3) innovator / creator	4) positive / hopeful
5) annoyed / upset	6) response / reply	7) personal / secret	8) create / provide
9) fit / healthy	10) receive / get		

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

11) abbreviation	12)said	13) told	14) linguist
15) apologised	16)suggested	17) insisted	18) tone
19) begged	20)misunderstand	21) reminded	22) frowned
23) message	24)advised	25) regretted	26) situation
27) begged	28)encouraged	29) with	30) recommend
31) suggest	32)confusing	33) accused	34) suggested
35) includes	36) to play	37) asked	38) dictionary
39)not to wait	40)agreed	41) dishonest	42) complained
43) reminded	44)comfortable	45) for	46) apply
47) to attend	48)promised	49) expect	50) offered

A) Translate into Arabic :

١- يعد التعلم ليس فقط قراءة الكتب ولكن أكثر من ذلك فهو شي ندرسه ليكون منسجماً مع طريقتنا في الحياة.
٢-لا يستطيع الناس الذين لا يفهمون بعضهم البعض تبادل أفكارهم ولا يمكنهم التواصل وتقوم برامج الترجمة بالمساعدة.
٣-يعتبر الهاتف الذكي حاسبا آليا محمولاً والذي يعد وسيلة الدخول إلى الإنترنت بجانب كونه مستقبل لبرامج تحديد المواقع عبر الأقمار الصناعية.

٤- يتم اعتبار أشكال كثيرة من التخاطب مثل الرموز التعبيرية التي تستخدم بشكل شائع على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي مثل الفيس بوك وتويتر.

٥- يمكنك القيام بأنشطة محددة على الهاتف المحمول الذي يتطلب التركيز والانتباه مثل العمل المدرسي و ألعاب الفيديو و الرسائل النصية.

B. Translate into English :

1-A lot of people use abbreviations and emojis to write their text messages via social websites because they are easier than the formal language.

2-Linguists study different languages and compare them and also set rules for learners who want to perfect this language to follow.

3- There was misunderstanding between me and one of my friends while discussing some financial matters and I realized I was wrong and I contacted him to make an apology.

4- All people should know that the increase in pollution rates may damage life on the earth and harm all living things.

5- When I buy the daily newspaper, I read the headlines, and in my spare time, I read the details of all the political, social and sports events.

Exam (6) based on Unit Four

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) fun / enjoyment	2) response / reply	3) shorten / contract	4) disturbed / upset

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) no longer	6) suggested	7) suitable	8) ought to have called
9) text	10) should have studied	11) grammar	12) invited
13) shouldn't have been	14) arguing	15) warned	16) promised
17) b	18) c	19) a	20) b
21) b	22) d	23) c	24) b

a) Translate into Arabic :

يعد الاشتراك في الألعاب الأولمبية هي أبرز مرحلة في مستقبل الرياضيين والرياضيات في كل مكان.

Magazines and newspapers contain drawings besides photos and attractive advertisements which attract readers of all ages.

Unit (5)

Exercises based on Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) helpful / useful	2) make / design	3) ask / consult	4) effectively / efficiently
5) source / cause	6) trusted / reliable	7) puzzled / confused	8) support / assistance
9) ill / negative	10) symbol / sign		

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

11) seems to	12) 're supposed to	13) means	14) was supposed to
15) seem	16) mistake	17) were supposed to	18) means
19) website	20) supposed to	21) seems	22) supposed to
23) updated	24) mean	25) is supposed to	26) upgraded
27) seems	28) 're supposed to be	29) was supposed to	30) sponsored
31) seemed	32) ads	33) is supposed to	34) aren`t supposed to
35) brainstorm	36) seems	37) mean	38) made
39) suppose	40) meant	41) social	42) seems
43) was supposed	44) behaviour	45) means	46) guide
47) seems	48) disagree	49) suppose	50) survey

١- تعتبر إحدى فوائد التسوق عبر الإنترنت هي القدرة على أن تقرأ مقالات عن المنتج كتبت اما بواسطة خبراء و ممن قاموا بالشراء عبر الإنترنت.

٢- يحتاج معظمنا دائما نصائح مستقلة و موثوق فيها و دقيقة لتساعدهم في مراحل محددة في حياتهم .
٣- تتكلف الحكومة بالقطع اموالا كثيره للارتقاء بالعملية التعليمية في مصر وتشجيع علي استخدام التعلم عبر الانترنت والسبورة الذكيه.
٤- يعطي الانترنت الناس الفرص أن يتقدموا ويقومون بتنزيل أكبر قدر يريدونه بسهوله ومجانا بينما هم بالعمل اوبالمنزل.
٥- اعلان شبكه الانترنت هو نوع من الاعلان علي الشبكة العالمية، وله دورا كبيرا في تمكين التطور السريع للإعلان المدفوع عبر الانترنت.

B. Translate into English :

1) If you face a difficult problem you should consult an older person or someone who has enough experience in this field to save time and effort.
2) Sponsored advertisements have spread and provide financial support to an organization in return for putting the company's name on a position seen by all.
3) It has become possible now to download programs to help professions such as doctors, accountants and others.
4) We should care about doing a survey from time to time about a lot of social matters especially the ones related to customs and traditions.
5) Some managers prefer reliable people to efficient ones , they think efficiency can be improved with the passing of time.

Test (7) based on unit Five

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) target / focus on	2) slogan / banner	3) looking / searching	4) Advertisements / Announcements

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) is supposed to	6) take down	7) was supposed to	8) seems
9) downloaded	10) was supposed to	11) means	12) meant
13) website	14) suppose	15) sponsor	16) supposed
17) b	18) b	19) b	20) c
21) c	22) b	23) d	24) d

Translate into Arabic :

لقد اصبح تشييد عاصمه جديده لمصر ضروره،فهي يمكن ان تساهم في حل بعض المشاكل الراهنه.

B) Translate into English :

Public libraries should be provided with books to spread culture among all citizens and widen their scope of mind.

Unit (6)

Exercises based on Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) mistake / error	2) pile / heap	3) carols / songs	4) upset / sad
5) gift / present	6) behaved / reacted	7) make / have	8) nasty / terrible
9) served / treated	10) fired / sacked		

Choose the correct answer from a, b ,c or d:

11) 'll have	12) begged	13) won	14) will you give
15) would lent have	16) had	17) mean	18) must pay
19) could have gone	20) complained	21) about	22) would have
23) would have been	24) lost	25) hadn't barked	26) falling out
27) would have arrived	28) hangs	29) unless	30) on
31) Had I known	32) brought	33) provided that	34) were
35) had sold	36) storm	37) would have taken	38) minds
39) would you have done	40) had read	41) liked	42) would have
43) keep	44) had	45) begging	46) Unless

47) were	48) foggy	49) found	50) falling

A. Translate into Arabic:

١. لقد حاولت أن أبذل قصاري جهدي لتوضيح بعض الاخطاء الواضحة لجعل كل شيء واضح ومفهوم لكل عضو.
٢-بفضل التقدم العلمي في وسائل الاعلام و النقل ، اصبح العالم يبدو اصغر و أكثر تعاوناً.
٣- يتواصل تعلمك و تعليمك في كل لحظه في حياتك، بالمنزل في العمل، في النادي وحتي في مكان نومك.
٤- هناك كثيرا من الحوار بين الشخصيات، بينهما هم يدردشون كل مع الاخر عبر الانترنت خلال وقت فراغهم.
٥- يمكنك ان تتصل بالأنترنت لتراجع اي شيء مثل مدرسه جديده لأطفالك، علاج طبي او مقصد سياحي.

Translate into English.

1) It is certain that the misers live a miserable life and don`t enjoy the pleasures of life, their only aim is keeping money in all cases.
2) Being sociable by nature, man shouldn`t live alone away from others, but should be in contact with them.
3) Man may regret doing so many things such as wasting time or money or not listening to the other`s advice.
4) My brother was disappointed when he knew he hadn`t been chosen for the job he had applied for despite having all qualifications required.
5) We can`t imagine life in the future due to the rapid change in all sides of our life or the limitless inventions.

Test (8) based on unit six

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) expelled / fired	2) heaps / piles	3) mean / miserly	4) assistant / salesman

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) if	6) If	7) were struck	8) mean
9) paid	10) ‘d have felt	11) sigh	12) hadn’t been
13) for	14) studied	15) Had	16) getting
17) a	18) c	19) d	20) b
21) d	22) c	23) d	24) d

3) A) Translate into Arabic :

عندما يصرف انتباهك شئ ما فهو يمنعك من ان تفكر فيما تفعله و لذا حاول ان تركز.

B) Translate into English :

All the information you want is found on the world website, and you can get it at any time for free.

Revision *B* Test (9) based on unit (4 / 5 / 6)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) formal / official	2) Abbreviation / Brevity	3) pretty / smart	4) badly / poorly

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) could have	6) asked	7) should have	8) told
9) shouldn’t have stayed	10) researching	11) hadn’t had	12) wouldn’t have got
13) download	14) warned	15) reliably	16) if
17) d	18) c	19) b	20) c
21) c	22) c	23) a	24) b

A) Translate into Arabic :

في الماضي ، أعتاد العلماء ان يقوموا بتجاربهم مستخدمين الكثيرمن الحيوانات ، و يعتقدون ان حياة الانسان أعز كتير من حياة الحيوانات.

B) Translate into English :

Freedom isn't doing what you like, but doing what should be done without harming the others .

Revision *B* Test (10) based on unit (4 / 5 / 6)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) piled / kept	2) mean / indicate	3) confusing / puzzling	4) suffix / letters

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) unless	6) asked	7) had been	8) keep
9) about	10) could have won	11) shouldn't have done	12) she left
13) encourage	14) innovator	15) asked	16) advertise
17) c	18) c	19) b	20) a
21) b	22) b	23) b	24) a

3) A) Translate into Arabic :

يمكن للمرء أن يحقق طموحاته بالصبر والإرادة القوية مثل تلك السمات تمكنه أن يبقى هادئا و أن يتخذ القرارات الصحيحة

A lot of people tweet via social media , websites to express their opinions.

امتحان الصف الثاني الثانوي (٢٠٢١) للفصل الدراسي الأول

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) harbour / port	2) earned / made	3) able / reliable	4) scoring / getting

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) organ	6) dis	7) meant	8) you had said
9) myself	10) killed	11) enjoy	12) which
13) reaches	14) themselves	15) had been cleaned	16) for
17) a	18) b	19) a	20) b
21) d	22) b	23) b	24) d

General Exam (1)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) source / spring	2) novelty / innovation	3) uphold / sustain	4) sponsors / patrons

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) home	6) pick it up	7) Algae	8) is going to see
9) a new pair	10) linguistic	11) do	12) to make their
13) update	14) would rather	15) advertisers	16) as tall as
17) c	18) d	19) c	20) b
21) d	22) b	23) c	24) d

a. Translate into Arabic : Translation

لقد كان د.مجدى يعقوب جزءاً من فريق الأطباء الذين قاموا بأول زراعة قلب، لقد استفاد منه كثيراً من الأطباء.

It's a good idea to cooperate with others to improve performance because team work is much better than individual one .

General Exam (2)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) banner / slogan	2) aimed / targeted	3) reliable / honest	4) traditional / classic

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) to be	6) at last	7) out	8) rather
9) am going to be	10) until	11) infection	12) If
13) reacted	14) will be reduced	15) performed	16) late
17) b	18) c	19) d	20) a
21) d	22) b	23) d	24) c

a. Translate into Arabic :

لا تفقد فرصة فى رحلاتنا الرائعة للصيد، سوف يقوم مرشدينا بإبلاغك بكل شئ بخصوص الحيوانات المتوحشة التى قد تراها.

b. Translate into English :

Tourism is a means to give information about the past and the present of our country and it is a means for civilizations to meet and exchange information.

General Exam (3)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) celebrate / mark	2) Hymns / Carols	3) icon / symbol	4) sensible / sane

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) to wear	6) offered	7) most interesting	8) together
9) on	10) out	11) why	12) Cookies
13) were	14) result	15) should have	16) up
17) b	18) a	19) b	20) c
21) d	22) b	23) b	24) d

a. Translate into Arabic : Translation

الآن أعمل لدى شركة مصرية معروفة تكتب برامج الكمبيوتر للشركات الهامة.

The investigation is sure to bring out unpredictable surprising news.

General Exam (4)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) profits / earnings	2) conduct / behaviour	3) save / rescue	4) awake / restless

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) have	6) would study	7) shouldn't have been	8) should have
9) chest	10) is going to	11) hadn't met	12) resuscitate
13) mean	14) checks	15) is supposed to	16) hang out
17) c	18) c	19) b	20) a
21) c	22) a	23) c	24) c

a. Translate into Arabic :

من الصعب علي منظمة سلامة الغذاء أن تقوم بفحص كل الطعام الذي يُباع، ولذلك ينبغى على جميع الزبائن أن يكونوا حريصين على الطعام الذين يشترونه.

b. Translate into English :

How often do you eat potato chips or have fizzy drinks all the day round? Doctors warn about having too much of it especially children.

General Exam (5)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) fighting / arguing	2) official / formal	3) meaning / message	4) require / need

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5. supposed	6. should have	7. great	8. hadn't eaten
9. used to	10. shouldn't have	11. a bit more interesting	12. abbreviation
13. shouldn't have	14. lock	15. if	16. emergency
17. c	18. c	19. b	20. c
21. d	22. b	23. b	24. d

a. Translate into Arabic :

لم أقم بتسلق أي جبل خطير، يُعتبر تسلق جبل نوعاً من التحدى.

b. Translate into English :

If the weather clears up in the afternoon , we shall go for a drive.

General Exam (6)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) inhale / breathe	2) amount / sum	3) cuts / injuries	4) means / indicates

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) should have called	6) had to	7) shoulders	8) as hard as
9) pressing	10) whether to help	11) infection	12) am in a hurry
13) seems	14) events	15) suggested	16) went out
17) d	18) a	19) c	20) a
21) d	22) b	23) d	24) c

a. Translate into Arabic :

فى عالم اليوم، تُعتبر الكثير من فضائل الحيوان فى خطر أن تصبح منقرضة، فهى تعيش فى محميات ذات مساحة هائلة حيث تكون الحيوانات آمنة.

b. Translate into English :

The proposal he brought forward seemed a foolish one, so it was completely refused.

General Exam (7)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) shoulders / arms	2) To my mind / Personally	3) means / shows	4) produce / grow

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) the most	6) should have written	7) serve	8) used to speak
9) prepare	10) advised	11) will	12) in case
13) Let	14) by	15) likely	16) out
17) b	18) c	19) c	20) b
21) d	22) b	23) b	24) b

a. Translate into Arabic :

توجد مشكلة خطيرة فى الولايات المتحدة والكثير من الدول الأوربية والعربية. ماذا ينبغى أن يتم فى مشكلة القمامة التى لا يوجد مكان لها؟

This man is always ready to back up (support) his friends in time of need.

General Exam (8)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) ruin/ damage	2) performing / acting	3) met / touched	4) innovators / creators

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) had	6) had passed	7) should have	8) back
9) the lavatory is	10) the most famous	11) could have	12) follow
13) as soon as possible	14) is	15) seems	16) from
17) c	18) b	19) a	20) c
21) d	22) b	23) d	24) b

ينظر المتفائلون والمتشائمون لمستقبل العالم بطريقتين مختلفتين. يعتقد المتفائلون أن الإنسان سوف يتمتع بحياة مُريحة بينما يعتقد المتشائمون أن الإنسان سوف يموت (يفنى).

No one seemed to care about what had befallen me.

General Exam (9)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) rightly / correctly	2) available / accessible	3) readers / subscribers	4) announce / advertise

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5)shouldn't have spent	6)could have	7)will be introduced	8) will be watching
9)'ll	10) junk	11) appeals	12) online
13) was supposed to	14) have to	15) banner	16) doesn't have to
17) c	18) d	19) a	20) b
21) d	22) c	23) d	24) b

a. Translate into Arabic :

تحل الشرطة معظم المجرمين باستخدام العلم وأجهزة الكمبيوتر ، وتبحث فى أجهزة الكمبيوتر الخاصة بهم عن أسماء لصوص البنوك المشتبه بهم ويقبضون عليهم لاحقاً.

b. Translate into English :

The armed forces is the protective shield at emergencies and crises so, it should be upgraded from time to time.

General Exam (10)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) target / goal	2) saves / reserves	3) availability / accessibility	4) injured / cut

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5. don't have to	6. sustainable	7. will be living	8. could have
9. more	10. livestock	11. 'll	12. shouldn't have bought
13. tell	14. should have	15. ever	16. unless
17. c	18. a	19. c	20. b
21. c	22. d	23. d	24. d

يمكن أن تصبح سياحة الفضاء في القريب عملاً تجارياً كبيراً، يمكنها أن تُقدر بـ ١٠ بليون كل عام ولذا معظمنا لا يمكنه تحملها.

b. Translate into English :

He, who accustoms himself to fraud in little things, needs only the opportunity to practise it in great things.

General Exam (11)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) livestock / farm animals	2) first aid / treatment	3) strategy / technique	4) emergency / urgent

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) seems	6) mean	7) agriculture	8) 'll be sleeping
9) should have applied	10) variety	11) seems	12) bleeding
13) nothing	14) Please	15) ever	16) better
17) d	18) a	19) d	20) c
21) c	22) c	23) b	24) b

a. Translate into Arabic :

تريد وكالات الفضاء الأمريكية والروسية أن يقوم مزيداً من السائحين بزيارة محطة الفضاء الدولية حتى ينفقوا المال في الفضاء.

b. Translate into English :

There should be cooperation with the neighboring countries of common concern and interests in all fields .

General Exam (12)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) variety / diversity	2) reply / response	3) gossip / chat	4) touch / contact

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) should have	6) hadn't run	7) production	8) leave
9) if	10) hardly	11) seems	12) a few
13) advertise	14) website	15) suggested	16) pile
17) a	18) d	19) c	20) b
21) d	22) c	23) d	24) d

a. Translate into Arabic :

أنا مُؤيد للطعام العضوى لأنه طبيعي وصحى، بالإضافة إلى أنه لا يحتوى على أى كيماويات ويُحسن من جودة التربة.

b. Translate into English :

The huntsman aimed at the tiger and fired but missed it.

General Exam (13)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) begging / asking	2) sigh / groan	3) aimed / fired	4) mean / miserable

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) needn't have	6) waiting	7) should have	8) mistake
9) as	10) warm	11) write	12) of
13) research	14) in case	15) needn't	16) locations

17) d	18) b	19) d	20) c
21) d	22) b	23) a	24) d

a. Translate into Arabic :

ينبغي أن يتم الحفاظ على المصادر الطبيعية للأرض ولكن ليس على حساب إفساد البيئة.

b. Translate into English :

We hope that the Egyptian economy will recover soon to put an end to the difficult challenges we're facing.

General Exam (14)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) consult / ask	2) mention / name	3) reliable / valid	4) bleeding / loosing blood

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) took	6) shouldn't have	7) any	8) like
9) am going	10) reminded	11) as	12) healthy
13) at	14) severe	15) Which	16) react
17) c	18) b	19) c	20) d
21) b	22) a	23) d	24) d

Translation

a. Translate into Arabic :

لدى مديرى محلات السوبر ماركت حيل لتشجيع الناس أن ينفقوا مزيداً من الأموال بجذب انتباه الزبائن.

b. Translate into English :

Globalisation has serious effects on the developing countries if they do not benefit from its advantages in the fields of technology, industry and media as far as possible.

General Exam (15)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) check / make sure	2) instructions/ advice	3) aid / treatment	4) resistant / immune

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) insisted	6) techniques	7) made	8) flat
9) didn't have to	10) for an hour	11) suggested	12) played
13) chest	14) are used	15) cells	16) should have bought
17) a	18) c	19) b	20) c
21) c	22) a	23) a	24) d

a. Translate into Arabic :

تُعد المشكلة الكبرى لدولة ترغب ڧ جذب الكثير من السائحين هى تكلفة بناء فنادق وهى التى تبتلع الكثير من الأموال.

b. Translate into English :

We are all unified, Muslims and Christians in loving our dear country and working for its prosperity and this develops the feeling of citizenship.

General Exam (16)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) immune / resistant	2) defences / immunity	3) drowsing / asleep	4) hot / seasoned

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5)hadn't been	6) hadn't slammed	7) organ	8) being
9)asked	10) Thanksgiving	11)agreed	12) she did break my camera and that was wrong
13) Traditional	14) hadn't argued	15) spicy	16) about
17) c	18) d	19) c	20) c
21) d	22) b	23) a	24) b

a. Translate into Arabic :

هل تود أن تكتشف عالم الدولفين تحت الماء؟ إنضم إلينا فى يوليو أو أغسطس لتتلقى تدريباً من مرشدين خبراء.

b. Translate into English :

Agriculture is the main pillar of our national economy, so vast areas of the desert should be reclaimed to achieve self-sufficiency.

General Exam (17)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) esteem / respect	2) boost / support	3) variety / diversity	4) powerful / strong

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) As	6) special	7) turn them on	8) must
9) should have been	10) didn't	11) if	12) created
13) ought to	14) reread	15) than	16) a sound
17) a	18) b	19) c	20) c
21) b	22) a	23) b	24) d

a. Translate into Arabic :

يُعد السفر بالطائرة هو الأسرع، ويُعد السفر الجوى أرخص للأشخاص الذين يسافرون كثيراً.

b. Translate into English :

The world is about to run out of oil, energy experts think that it's probable there will be a serious shortage in 10 years' time.

General Exam (18)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) innovator / creator	2) boost / promote	3) webpages / blogs	4) smart / handsome

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) as	6) suggested	7) confusing	8) a three week holiday
9) can't	10) Carols	11) getting	12) didn't
13) make	14) good	15) download	16) lets
17) d	18) b	19) a	20) c
21) c	22) b	23) b	24) c

a. Translate into Arabic :

ليست الأخبار القديمة بأخبار، ولذلك قم بتحديث مدونتك بشكل دائم لكى تكون دقيق ومواكب.

The government does its best to reduce the prices of goods and commodities to be affordable (accessible) to all.

General Exam (19)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) check / examine	2) abbreviated / shortened	3) emergency / crisis	4) suffered / ached

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) abbreviations	6) offline	7) will be	8) unless
9) 'll be passing	10) had to	11) interest	12) should have
13) buying	14) 'll be doing	15) upload	16) confused
17) c	18) b	19) c	20) a
21) d	22) c	23) d	24) d

Translation

a. Translate into Arabic :

من المحتمل أن تكون تايتنك هى أشهر سفينة تحطمت فى العالم، لقد اصطدمت السفينة بجبل جليدى وبدأت فى الغرق.

b. Translate into English :

All people should be treated on equal feet apart from gender, colour or religion.

General Exam (20)

Choose the TWO correct answers :

1) aim / target	2) abbreviation / brevity	3) chest / breast	4) hang out / spend time

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

5) seems	6) resource	7) supposed	8) needn't have
9) about	10) 'll be thinking	11) you have got	12) seem
13) fell	14) mustn't	15) offered	16) source
17) a	18) c	19) b	20) b
21) c	22) b	23) d	24) c

a. Translate into Arabic :

إذا ذهبتُ إلى المحلات بالمنطقة مثل الجيم بالسيارة، كيف يمكنك أن تصبح لائقاً، يُعد المشى أو ركوب الدراجة أفضل كثيراً لك ويوفر الكثير من المال.

b. Translate into English :

Most modern zoos do not make profits and depend on donations but they provide a healthy safe environment for species threatened of extinction.

امتحانات عامة علمى و ادبى خاصة بالأزهر الشريف

General Exam (1) الأزهر السريف

1) Write what you would say in each of the following situations:-

1- It is an international language.

2- It's a good do to revise well.

2) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1. forever	2. carbonated	3. passed	4. tolerance
5. more healthy			

3) Find the mistakes in the following sentences, then correct them:-

1- who → whose
2- find → fined
3- leave → to leave
4- did → were
5- Who → What

4) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:-

1- This is my old room where I used to study in as a student.
2- Food must be kept in the fridge.
3- He has worked for this company since 2013.
4- I used to go to bed late.
5- Heba isn't as old as Mona.

5) Reading Comprehension

A) Answer the following questions:

1- There are pictures of the ancient Egyptians doing sports on the walls of their building.
2- Pharaohs and important people.
3- Yes, of course. Because sports are important for man.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

4- given kind words / 5- ancient picture

6) Islamic Selections

1- Fasting is the fourth pillar of Islam.
2- Zakat shows solidarity, security and affability in the Muslim community.

a. Translate into Arabic :

ينبغى أن نشجع أطفالنا أن يمارسوا الأنشطة التى تعطيهم الخبرة المُفيدة.

b. Translate into English :

It is always a good idea to cooperate with others.

General Exam (2)الأزهر السريف

1) Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:-

1- Why don't you come with me. 2- I can't

3- Can't you come 4- I wish he'd be better soon

2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- I agree with you. 2- You should come to school on time.

3) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1. poisonous	2. floods	3. exclude	4. deals	5. had seen

4) Find the mistakes in the following sentences, then correct them:-

1- Non-organic --------> organic
2- attack --------> attract
3- who's --------> whose
4- after --------> until (till)
5- don't --------> do

5) Reading Comprehension

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Future problems.
2- To produce high quality food / develop new crops.
3- Doing research into new treatments for serious illnesses.

B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

4- more efficient cars 5- the problems

6) Islamic Selections

1- Al-Qadr Night .
2-They have their sins forgiven altogether crowned with luminous haloes.

a. Translate into Arabic :

تُساعد المشروعات الجديدة أن توفر وظائف جديدة وأن تُزيد الدخل القومي.

b. Translate into English :

A lot of the Egyptian Families suffer from the constant rise in prices.

General Exam (3)الأزهر السريف

1) Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:-

1- To the library 2- Why are going there

3- Ok. I will do 4- Thanks a lot

2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- Congratulations ! 2. Could I borrow your dictionary ?

2) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1. qualifications	2. forever	3. tolerant	4. the most / 5. for

3) Find the mistakes in the following sentences, then correct them:-

1- make ......> take
2- to ......> for
3- come ......> coming
4- Geologists ......> Surgeons
5- Amateurs ......> Professionals

5) Reading Comprehension

A) Answer the following questions:

1- How to control over your time
2- When you control watching it
3- Amusement programs such as films and serials

B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

4- TV programs / 5- under control

6) Islamic Selections

1. They have their hearts fed and their souls vitalized with good intentions, words and deeds .
2- Pilgrimage is the fifth Pillar of Islam .

a. Translate into Arabic :

يُعد إقامة المشروعات الصغيرة الحل الأمثل للتغلب على مشكلة البطالة.

b. Translate into English :

All the information you want is on the internet.

General Exam (4)الأزهر السريف

1) Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:-

1- What about you ? 2- With whom
3- For how long 4- Thanks a lot

2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- Best of luck. 2- I am strongly agree.

3) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1. member	2. causes	3. valid	4. agriculture / 5. predict

3) Find the mistakes in the following sentences, then correct them:-

1- friend -----> friendly
2- Brotherhood -----> Childhood
3- leave -----> be left
4- since -----> for
5- paint -----> had painted

5) Reading Comprehension

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Yes, it is. Because they move quickly
2- to buy a video camera
3- to film happy occasions of the family

B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

4- seven 5- children

a. Translate into Arabic :

يُعد التعاون هو أفضل طريقة لتعيش حياة ناجحة ولذلك لا يستطيع الإنسان أن يحقق التقدم بدونها.

b. Translate into English :

We all dream of freedom, peace, safety and prosperity.

General Exam (5)الأزهر السريف

1) Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:-

1- Can I use your passport 2- Why have you come here
3- For how long 4- Have a nice stay

2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations:-

1- I wish you a speedy recovery. 2- You should be more accurate.

3) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1. pesticides	2. Diabetes	3. civilizations	4. reputation 5. came

4) Find the mistakes in the following sentences, then correct them:-

1- leaves -------> left
2- was he -------> he was
3- went -------> go
4- needn't -------> mustn't
5- vice -------> virtue

5) Reading Comprehension

A) Answer the following questions:

1- Yes, of course. 2- Represent. 3- The college of Science.

B) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

4- refuses

5- have the same importance as all

a. Translate into Arabic : Translation

لقد غيرت الحاسبات الآلية والتقنية الحديثة حياتنا للأفضل.

b. Translate into English :

Security is the base to attract investors and flourish tourism.

General Exam (6)الأزهر السريف

1) Write what you would say in each of the following situations:-

1- To help sick people.

2- You should do a sport.

2) Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

1. toxic	2. caffeine	3. vocational	4. prove / 5. so

3) Find the mistakes in the following sentences, then correct them:-

1- who ……………………> which
2- up ……………………> sure
3- you don't ……………………> don't you
4- should spend ……………………> should be spent
5- space ……………………> spare

4) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:-

1- A laboratory is a place where scientists do their experiment.
2- My computer was repaired in half an hour.
3- He has worked here for a long period of time.
4- When I was young, I didn't get up late.
5- My father arrived home while I was studying my lessons.

5) Reading Comprehension

A) Answer the following questions:

1- There are pictures of the ancient Egyptians doing sports on the walls of their building.
2- Pharaohs and important people.
3- Yes, of course. Because sports are important for man .

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :-

4- given kind words
5- ancient picture

a. Translate into Arabic :

من الضروري أن نحمى مياه النيل من التلوث لتجنب الأمراض.

b. Translate into English :

Parents should help children to get over their fears.